

Agenda for a meeting of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee to be held in the Council Chambers, District Office, 15 Galileo Street, Ngaruawahia on **WEDNESDAY, 28 JUNE 2023** commencing at **9.30am**.

1. APOLOGIES AND LEAVE OF ABSENCE

2. CONFIRMATION OF STATUS OF AGENDA

3. CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

Meeting held on Wednesday, 17 May 2023 5

4. DISCLOSURES OF INTEREST

5. ACTIONS REGISTER – JUNE 2023 15

6. REPORTS

6.1 Summary of Movement in Discretionary Funds to 15 June 2023 18

6.2 Community Engagement Report 23

6.3 Recovery Plan – Cyclone Gabrielle 26

6.4 Draft Taiao in the Waikato Strategy Deliberations Panel Recommendations 52

6.5 Blueprint Implementation Progress Update 93

6.6 Adaptive Management Planning and Port Waikato Erosion 173

6.7 Three Waters Reform Better off Funding Special Project Update June 2023 279

7. EXCLUSION OF THE PUBLIC

It is intended to discuss all matters in the open section of the meeting, however, should in depth legal advice or information, subject to a confidence, be requested from the Committee a resolution may be passed to exclude the public to hold these discussions.

GJ Ion
CHIEF EXECUTIVE

SUSTAINABILITY AND WELLBEING COMMITTEE

Reports to:	Council
Chairperson:	Cr Lisa Thomson
Deputy Chairperson:	Deputy Mayor Carolyn Eyre
Membership:	The Mayor and all Councillors
Meeting frequency:	Six-weekly
Quorum:	Majority of the members (including vacancies)

Purpose

The Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee is responsible for:

1. Developing strategies and plans to achieve the goals of Council's Long-Term Plan as they relate to sustainability and the four wellbeings.
2. Enhancing the District's economic position by promoting it as a business-friendly and business-enabled location and providing direction on strategic initiatives, plans, projects, and potential major developments relating to economic and business development.
3. Monitoring of Council's sustainability and wellbeing related strategies and plans.
4. Partnering to guide the provision of strategic community services to meet the current and future needs of the district and the enhanced wellbeing of its communities.
5. Facilitating community and stakeholder involvement and engagement with community infrastructure, safety, and wellbeing matters.
6. Overseeing civil defence and emergency management.
7. Approval and monitoring of funding to benefit the social, cultural, and environmental wellbeing of communities.

In addition to the common delegations, the Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee is delegated the following Terms of Reference and powers:

Terms of Reference – Sustainability & Wellbeing

- To develop, monitor and review Council's plans and strategies in relation to climate resilience and adaptation.
- To develop, monitor and review Council's plans and strategies in relation to desired community outcomes, including Blueprints.
- To develop, monitor and review Council's Economic Development plans and strategies.
- To develop, monitor and review Council's social development and cultural wellbeing plans and strategies.

Terms of Reference – Engagement and Funding:

- To develop and agree engagement strategy and plans for the purpose of enhancing community engagement and involvement.
- To provide advice on the development and implementation of strategies in relation to the impacts on sustainability and the four wellbeings.
- To receive and consider presentations and reports from stakeholders, government departments, organisations and interest groups on development and wellbeing issues and opportunities within the District.
- To determine funding applications for the Discretionary Grants Fund in accordance with the Discretionary Grants Policy and Guidelines, in a fair and just manner.
- To monitor and review the work of the Creative Communities Scheme Assessment Committee on a regular basis.
- To prioritise allocation of funding for community activities in accordance with Council policy and strategy

Terms of Reference – Civil Defence and Emergency Management:

- To monitor the performance of Waikato District’s civil defence and emergency management response against Council’s requirements under the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act including:
 - a.) implementation of Government requirements; and
 - b.) co-ordinating with, and receiving reports from, the Waikato Region Civil Defence and Emergency Management Group Joint Committee.

Civil Defence and Emergency Management

- Monitor the performance of Waikato District’s civil defence and emergency management response against Council’s requirements under the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act including:
 - a. implementation of Government requirements; and
 - b. co-ordinating with, and receiving reports from, the Waikato Region Civil Defence and Emergency Management Group Joint Committee.

The Committee is delegated the following powers to act:

Approval of:

- Climate resilience and adaption strategies and plans
- Economic Development strategies and plans
- District and Community Blueprints
- Social Development and Cultural strategies and plans
- Community Engagement strategies and plans
- Approval of funding applications for the Rural Ward Fund within the funds allocated by the Council on an annual basis (other than those applications to be determined by the relevant community board or community committee).
- Approval of funding applications for the Heritage Assistance Fund and Conservation Fund as recommended to the committee by officers or relevant assessment bodies.
- Approval of funding applications for any other community-based funding as delegated to the committee by the Council.

To	Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Confirmation of Minutes
Date:	15 June 2023
Report Author:	Lynette Wainwright, Democracy Advisor
Authorised by:	Gaylene Kanawa, Democracy Manager

1. Purpose of the report Te Take moo te puurongo

To confirm the minutes for a meeting of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee held on Wednesday, 17 May 2023.

2. Staff recommendations Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

THAT the minutes for a meeting of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee held on Wednesday, 17 May 2023 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

3. Attachments Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 – S&W Minutes – 17 May 2023.

Minutes of a meeting of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee of the Waikato District Council held in the Council Chambers, District Office, 15 Galileo Street, Ngaruawahia on **WEDNESDAY, 17 MAY 2023** commencing at **9.36AM.**

Present:

Cr L Thomson (Chairperson)
Her Worship the Mayor, Mrs JA Church
Cr C Beavis
Cr C Eyre
Cr M Raumati
Cr V Reeve - *via audio visual conference*
Cr L Thomson
Cr T Turner
Cr D Whyte

Attending:

Mr G Ion (Chief Executive)
Ms A Diaz (Chief Financial Officer)
Mr K Abbott (Executive Manager – Projects & Innovation)
Ms J Dolan (Economic and Community Development Manager)
Ms R Goddard (Climate Action & Sustainability Manager)
Ms D Tracey (Strategic Planning Team Leader)
Mr J Fuller (Senior Environmental Planner)
Ms M Speedy (People Business Partner)
Ms D Thurlow (Community-Led Development Advisor)
Ms G Shaw (Democracy Advisor)

Guests

Ms F Rhodes (Tauwhare Community Committee) - *via audio visual conference*

Cr Raumati opened the meeting with a Karakia.

APOLOGIES AND LEAVE OF ABSENCE

Resolved: (Crs Patterson/Raumati)

THAT the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee accepts the apologies from:

- a. Crs Gibb, Keir, Ngataki and P Thomson for non-attendance.**

CARRIED

S&W2305/01

CONFIRMATION OF STATUS OF AGENDA ITEMS

Resolved: (Her Worship the Mayor, Mrs JA Church/Cr Beavis)

THAT:

- a. the agenda for a meeting of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee held on Wednesday, 17 May 2023 be confirmed; and
- b. all items therein be considered in open meeting, with the exception of those items detailed at agenda item 7, which shall be considered with the public excluded; and
- c. all reports be received.

CARRIED

S&W2305/02

CONFIRMATION OF MINUTES

Resolved: (Crs Raumati/Turner)

THAT:

- a. the minutes for a meeting of the Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee held on Wednesday, 5 April 2023 be confirmed as a true and correct record of that meeting, noting an amendment bullet four (4) on page 11 and noting that Cr Eyre was present; and
- b. the minutes of a meeting of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee Hearings Panel held on Tuesday, 18 April 2023 be confirmed as a true and correct record.

CARRIED

S&W2305/03

DISCLOSURES OF INTEREST

There were no disclosures of interest.

ACTIONS REGISTER

Agenda Item 5

The report was received [*S&W2305/02 refers*] and no discussion was held.

REPORTS

Application to the Rural Ward Fund Agenda Item 6.1

The report was received [S&W2305/02 refers] and the Community-Led Development Advisor spoke to the report. The following items were discussed:

- It was clarified that Community Boards (CBs) and two (2) Community Committees (CCs) had a pool of discretionary funds. There was a separate rural ward fund for those outside these groups.
- Tauwhare Transmitter - a newsletter which had been produced since 1975 was considered an important rural communication carrier for the local community which brings the community together.
- Ms Rhodes noted that the majority of the community preferred a printed copy. Funding towards the cost of continuing to provide printed copies was being sought.
- While Committee members were supportive of the application, some raised concerns about outdated guidelines for funding and the need for equity across the district.
- Staff noted that work had been underway, in collaboration with community boards and community committees, to update the funding guidelines.

ACTION: Community Led Development team to provide Councillors with updated discretionary fund and rural ward fund guidelines and application processes.

- It was noted that the annual budget for the Rural Ward Fund is \$39,000. Staff agreed there was a need to revise the guidelines and review the support given to smaller community committees.
- It was noted that the long-term prospects of sustaining the newsletter and communication lines remained uncertain. Different models would be investigated to ensure resilience and sustainability for these kinds of local publications throughout the district.
- It was suggested that staff could look at bringing together various committees and hall committees to discuss these issues more comprehensively.
- The Committee also raised concerns about the minimal amount of money available to support smaller community committees, which had not been updated to reflect inflation.
- Overall, staff and councillors recognised the importance of rural communication and the need to support it as a whole.

ACTION: Staff to provide Councillors with information regarding the financial support available to small community committees throughout the district, and how financial or other available support can be accessed by those groups.

Resolved: (Crs Beavis/Eyre)

THAT the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee:

- a. **approves an allocation of \$800.00 (excl. GST) from the Rural Ward fund to:**
 - i. **Tauwhare Community Committee to support the publication of the community newsletter, the Tauwhare Transmitter, in 2023.**

CARRIED

S&W2305/04

Economic and Community Led Development Work Programme Update
Agenda Item 6.2

The report was received [S&W2305/02 refers] and the Economic and Community Development Manager spoke to the report. The following items were discussed:

- The Economic and Community Development team aimed to ensure that Councillors receive reports with no surprises (i.e., Councillors would have already been briefed and communicated with prior to reports on various topics in this work stream being presented in meeting agendas).
- The regional placemaking forum had been set up recently, and there had been good buy-in from various communities.
- Collaborating with the Maaori community was discussed and there was recognition of the need to further educate ourselves on how to improve our work in this space.
- Efforts had been made to view matters through a rural lens to help staff to better comprehend the needs of the people they serve. Councillors were encouraged to connect with the Economic and Community Development team that manages the Work Programme to raise any concerns or questions.
- The Committee emphasised the need for smart and innovative growth based on the four pillars (social, economic, environmental, and cultural) and the importance of channelling information to the team/s responsible.
- It was noted that the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee may benefit from adding a standing PEX item to its agenda each meeting cycle. There was a suggestion that this report could be titled something along the lines of: 'Sensitive Commercial Matters'.

ACTION: Staff to consider adding a standing PEX report (regarding sensitive commercial matters) to the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee agendas going forward.

- It was important to note that there were several avenues through which investors could approach Council and we must be careful not to restrict their access.

- Discussion touched on solar farms, which sometimes attracted opposition from the public. Some Councillors noted that we do not want to be overly prescriptive gatekeepers as to how people use their land. It is imperative to strike a balance between addressing valid concerns and not serving as a hindrance to innovation.
- In the case of Raglan, the wind farm initially drew a lot of criticism, but people eventually adapted to its presence.
- A point was raised, noting it was important to ensure that we are comfortable with where opportunities are heading. While Council were not directly responsible for aspects of what was in place, they must remain vigilant and mindful of any implications.
- It was noted that Mercer was a small community with a population of fewer than 200 residents. Councillors were set to attend an upcoming workshop prompted by an economic development opportunity in the area. There was an acknowledgement that Council sought to foster a holistic approach to conducting business, with an aim to bring together various departments with cross-functional implications and promote transparency in decision-making processes.
- Discussion focused on finding ways to increase capacity for small to medium enterprises by building suitable infrastructure in communities and promoting business sustainability. Interest was expressed in gaining more information around Council's strategy on this topic and advocating for SMEs.
- To achieve this goal, there were suggestions that Council could evaluate available properties and encourage both Community Committees (CCs) and Community Boards (CBs) to consider the four pillars of wellbeing - social, economic, cultural, and environmental - when making decisions.
- Additionally, there was a proposal for a stronger focus on reporting economic and cultural activities to these groups to support a transition towards a more supportive role for small businesses.

ACTION: Staff to provide Councillors with information regarding Council's strategy to grow capacity (in terms of buildings/structures) for local communities and small businesses. Councillors were also interested in how they could provide advocacy for small businesses in their wards.

- One consideration that was raised related to how Council partners with Maaori. It was felt that Council viewed Maaori as holding a distinct cultural identity and questioned if Council was looking into ways to engage with Maaori effectively. It was acknowledged that there was a learning curve involved with this endeavor.
- A Maaori voice and narrative was an important focus of any collaborative work undertaken. This approach would benefit all parties involved. Additionally, it was envisioned this collaborative effort would be an opportunity to highlight and celebrate the heritage of the Waikato people, which would serve as a meaningful and valuable contribution to society.

- The importance of viewing this line of work through a rural lens was discussed. It was noted that the Rural Advisory Panel sought to take into consideration the unique needs and challenges of rural communities. The panel had a high-level focus, and included Mana Whenua representatives, who provided a valuable perspective. Ongoing discussions had been held to support staff in gaining a better understanding of rural communities' needs, ensuring that their work was effective and relevant.

Climate Action Progress Update 2023

Agenda Item 6.3

The report was received [*S&W2305/02 refers*] and the Climate Action & Sustainability Manager spoke to the report. The following items were discussed:

- There had been an objective to establish a think tank that would assemble key strategic thinkers with the intention of undertaking a mapping exercise. This would be an initial step where the participants would begin to construct a map of ideas. A workshop would follow to further develop those ideas.
- The Climate Response and Resiliency Strategy had been drafted and focus groups had been established to provide feedback on the strategy.
- The Green House Gas Inventory saw a reduction in emissions in the last financial year.
- Staff provided information regarding the integration of electric vehicles (EVs) in the Council's fleet. As it pertained to Council fleet vehicles, enquiries were made regarding the cost benefit and pay back of EVs. It was acknowledged that EVs come with a higher price tag; however, the government had conducted a cost-benefit analysis on the matter and recommended that Council continue to explore and plan for the transition to EVs. It was also noted that EVs were comparatively low maintenance vehicles.
- It was queried that, in consideration of our efforts towards climate action, was Council adequately factoring in the impact on the rural economy and its inhabitants? It was noted that the previously established climate steering group had dissolved with the formation of the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee. The current climate advisory group consisted solely of staff members. Therefore, it would be beneficial to seek input from the community during think tank sessions.
- It was noted that in order to continue making progress in percentages, it was becoming increasingly challenging to identify new areas for improvement. However, Council may still consider exploring alternative options, such as LED streetlights and public lighting. Another potential area to focus on was sports field lighting as there were various viable LED solutions available. A review of flood lighting throughout the district had not yet taken place, and this would be a constructive step to undertake.
- Staff acknowledged that electricity was one of the highest contributors to CO2 emissions. As such, staff were waiting for an update on this matter and would take necessary action in the next report. It was hoped that relevant staff would be able to provide an update on this stocktake in the near future.

ACTION: Staff to provide Councillors with an update on the stocktake of streetlight/public lighting (e.g., were LED options being utilised where possible).

- It was noted that the above lighting issue would be brought to an upcoming Infrastructure Committee meeting, and budgets, plans and other relevant points would be discussed.
- A point was raised regarding the previously discussed think tank and the opportunity to engage with Maaori in this process. Specifically, to what extent Council was open to including Maaori in the upcoming process.
- Staff confirmed that it was hoped that the approach to the strategy would involve a comprehensive incorporation of Maaori culture throughout. It made sense to align scientific and Maaori cultural theories in order to complement and enhance one another.
- It was noted that a significant proportion of the waste deposited at the Hampton Downs Landfill was not generated by the district. However, as the waste was dumped within the district, it was considered the district's responsibility. To address this situation and achieve greater accountability, implementing a source-based measurability reporting system was suggested.
- Noted that while other waste statistics in the area were also not directly attributable to the district, they still had an impact on the district.
- It was confirmed that the Hampton Downs Landfill (dump) was managed by Enviro Waste, meaning Council does not collect data related to this site for their reporting purposes. A Committee member suggested the need for greater clarity on the tracking of waste data related to the Hampton Downs Landfill.
- The focus of the framework development turned to wetlands, particularly in the context of our region's growth. It was noted that we had the second largest wetlands area in the North Island, and building on these sites may have significant impact, which was a concern.
- As the Waikato region is a basin, our wetlands are critical in terms of environmental and community protection. There was a need to understand the implications of further development of wetlands for the next two to three decades, especially given the increasing frequency of weather events. Protecting our communities was a priority and required careful consideration of our available resources.
- Staff acknowledged that wetlands were a valuable resource that we could not afford to lose and their importance could not be overstated. Legal constraints govern our work, such as the Resource Management Act (RMA) and the Climate Change Adaptation Act, which was yet to be released. Despite these limitations, it was crucial that we focus on planning for the future and gather this information.

Emergency Management Update

Agenda Item 6.4

The report was received [S&W2305/02 refers] and the Emergency Management Advisor spoke to the report. The following items were discussed:

- The emergency operations centre was recently activated due to another weather event and the Committee was advised that Council were expecting another front to arrive from the west within the next week.
- The community response plan had strong support from the elected members, with 49 communities showing interest in having a response plan.

Amended Draft Taiao in the Waikato Strategy

Agenda Item 6.5

The report was received [S&W2304/02 refers] and the following items were discussed:

- Staff presented an amended version of the Taiao in the Waikato Strategy, noting there were tracked changes to illustrate that amendments had been made and some sections had been moved around based on submissions received and discussion with the deliberations panel.
- The document had been slimmed down by removing commentary, all of which was in compliance with the submissions received. Discussions were held about ensuring the changes made were legal, and clarity was sought around drafting.
- This was the first draft that the new governing body would adopt, and it underwent an extended consultation process, which included hearings and deliberations. The scope would allow for amendments to be made to the strategy, and the regional council had made a submission on how to improve the flow of the document.
- Following the return of the document from the designer, the document would be sent back to each submitter to inform them on the parts that had been addressed.
- A concern was raised about leaving out the coastal community of Te Akau South in the reference to the coastal reserves on page 97, which could be added. Additionally, there was a desire to ensure the language used throughout the document was smooth and easily understood.

Resolved: (Her Worship the Mayor, Mrs JA Church/Cr Turner)

THAT the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee:

- a. notes that the deliberations panel had considered and responded to the submissions received on the draft Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy as per Attachment 4B to this agenda; and
- b. approves the amendments to the draft Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy as recommended by the hearings and deliberations panel (Attachment 2), including allowance for spelling and grammatical adjustments during the design phase.

CARRIED

S&W2305/05

The Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee closed the meeting with a Karakia.

There being no further business the meeting was declared closed at 11.38am.

Minutes approved and confirmed this day of 2023.

Cr L Thomson
CHAIRPERSON

To	Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Actions Register – June 2023
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	Ashleigh Fairhead, Executive Assistant to the Chief Operating Officer
Authorised by:	Clive Morgan, General Manager Community Growth

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

To update the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee on the actions arising from the previous meeting.

2. Staff recommendations

Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

THAT the Actions Register – June 2023 be received.

3. Attachments

Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 – Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee Actions Register June 2023

	Action	Responsible to Action	Status/Update/Response
1.	<p><u>Application to the Rural Ward Fund</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Community Led Development team to provide Councillors with updated discretionary fund and rural ward fund guidelines and application processes. Staff to provide Councillors with information regarding the financial support available to small community committees throughout the district, and how financial or other available support can be accessed by those groups. 	Economic and Community Led Development Team	<p>June 2023</p> <p>Workshop held 15 June regarding funding – update on actions to be provided at next S&W meeting.</p>
2.	<p><u>Economic and Community Led Development Work Programme Update</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Staff to provide Councillors with information regarding Council's strategy to grow capacity (in terms of buildings/structures) for local communities and small businesses. Councillors were also interested in how they could provide advocacy for small businesses in their wards. 	Clive Morgan, General Manager Community Growth	<p>June 2023</p> <p>Further clarification to be sought from the Committee regarding growing capacity (in terms of buildings/structures) to help understand if this is in relation to providing community spaces for businesses to utilise?</p> <p>The Economic and Community Led Development Team when engaging businesses in specific wards undertake to inform the ward councillors of these activities and welcome Council engagement. If staff are approached by businesses asking for support from local Councillors this staff do pass this information on to the representative Councillor.</p>

	Action	Responsible to Action	Status/Update/Response
3.	<p><u>Climate Action Progress Update 2023</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Staff to provide Councillors with an update on the stocktake of streetlight/public lighting (e.g., were LED options being utilised where possible). 	<p>Rachael Goddard, Senior Advisor - Climate Action</p>	<p>June 2023</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> We have a total of 5596 lights within the roading network. 4953 (88%) have LED heads. The remaining 12% are made up of non carriageway lights or decorative lights such as Windsor Heritage, Refuge Globes, Belushi Beacons, Under Veranda, Sign Lights, Kendelier Promenade etc. There is no plan to retrofit these lights to LED. <p>The District carriageway light LED upgrade is now complete, however if any outstanding HPS or MV lights are encountered when the bulbs fail they are to be replaced with LED.</p>

To	Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Summary of Movement in Discretionary Funds Report to 15 June 2023
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	J Schimanski Support Accountant
Authorised by:	Brandan Botha, Financial Team Lead

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

The purpose of this report is to present to the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee a summarised report giving balances of all discretionary funds including commitments as at 15 June 2023.

2. Staff recommendations

Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

THAT the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee receives the report.

3. Attachments

Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 – Discretionary Fund report Rural Ward to 15 June 2023

Attachment 2 – Discretionary Fund report Events Management to 15 June 2023

Attachment 3 – Discretionary Fund report Conservation Fund to 15 June 2023

Attachment 4 – Discretionary Fund report Summary of Movement to 15 June 2023

RURAL WARD DISCRETIONARY FUND 2022/23 (July 2022 - June 2023)

As at Date: 15-Jun-2023

	GL	1.202.1704
2021/22 Annual Plan		30,963.00
Carry forward from 2022/23		31,737.00
Total Funding		62,700.00
Income		
Total Income		-
Expenditure		
9/10/2022 Payment to Sundry Creditor Huntly Golf Club - Funding for tractor	D&F2209/06	5,500.00
10/10/2022 Payment to Sundry Creditor Dynamo Cycling - Funding Gravel National Cycling Event	D&F2209/07	5,000.00
12/10/2022 Payment to Sundry Creditor Waikato Clay Target Club - purchasing tr	D&F2209/04	2,200.00
Payment to Sundry Creditor Waerenga Memorial Church CDR0503 REF D&F2209/05 -	D&F2209/05	
31/10/2022 Funding costs of repairs to church		5,069.57
23/11/2022 Payment to WHATAWHATA RESI D&F2206/04	D&F2206/04	12,000.00
Payment to Whatawhata Community Facility from the Discretionary Fund to the	D&F2206/04	
23/11/2022 Whatawhata Rural Fund for the amount of \$12,000 (exl GST)		12,000.00
Repayment of \$12,000.00 from Whatawhata Resicdents and Ratepayers Association - double	D&F2206/04	
23/11/2023 payment from WDC returned.		-12,000.00
Payment of \$7,187.00 to the Pukemokemoke Bush Trust towards the cost of extending the	D&F201 I/06	
26/04/2023 existing car park boundary		7,187.00
Total Expenditure		36,956.57
Net Funding Remaining (Excluding commitments)		25,743.43
Commitments		
30/06/2022 Commitment to Art in Nature Arboretum Trust for the amount of \$3,500 (plus GST if any) towards the cost of educational materials for the community	D&F2206/03	4,025.00
17/05/2023 Commitment to Tauwhare Community Committee for the amount of \$800. (plus GST if any) towards the cost of publication of the community newsletter the Tauwhare Transmitter in 2023	S&W2305/04	800.00
Total Commitments		4,825.00
Net Funding Remaining (Including commitments)		20,918.43

EVENTS MANAGEMENT FUND DISCRETIONARY FUND REPORT 2022/23 (July 2022 - June 2023)

As at Date: 15-Jun-2023

	PR	5CG51000
2022/2023 Annual Plan		-
Carry forward from 2021/2022		30,651.00
Total Funding		30,651.00
Income		
NO LONGER EXISTS \$25,000 Annually TO SAM BAKER TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT ANZAC and Blue print budget Sam to confirm and transfer Actual list of what is going to Blue Print w Julie, Lianne and Jason Julie Nick and Sam		
Total Income		-
Expenditure		
01-Sep-2022 Unspent,"GrantMoney TEK A&P ASSN returned 01/09/2022		(427.00)
Total Expenditure		(427.00)
Net Funding Remaining (Excluding commitments)		31,078.00
Commitments		
19-Aug-22 c'fwd transferred to Project Community Growth 5CG60000 E 1700		30,651.00
18-Nov-2021 Payment to Te Kauwhata A&P Association for the amount of \$5,8618.93 towards Annual A&P Show Less Spent Te Kauwhata A&P Associations	D&F2111/03	5,618.93 (5,191.93)
01-Sep-2022 Less Unspent,"GrantMoney TEK A&P ASSN returned 01/09/2022		427.00
Total Commitments		31,078.00
Net Funding Remaining (Including commitments)		-

EVENTS MANAGEMENT FUND DISCRETIONARY FUND REPORT 2022/23 (July 2022 - June 2023)

As at Date: 15-Jun-2023

	PR	5CG51000
2022/2023 Annual Plan		-
Carry forward from 2021/2022		30,651.00
Total Funding		30,651.00
Income		
NO LONGER EXISTS \$25,000 Annually TO SAM BAKER TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT ANZAC and Blue print budget Sam to confirm and transfer Actual list of what is going to Blue Print w Julie, Lianne and Jason Julie Nick and Sam		
Total Income		-
Expenditure		
01-Sep-2022 Unspent,"GrantMoney TEK A&P ASSN returned 01/09/2022		(427.00)
Total Expenditure		(427.00)
Net Funding Remaining (Excluding commitments)		31,078.00
Commitments		
19-Aug-22 c'fwd transferred to Project Community Growth 5CG60000 E 1700		30,651.00
18-Nov-2021 Payment to Te Kauwhata A&P Association for the amount of \$5,8618.93 towards Annual A&P Show Less Spent Te Kauwhata A&P Associations	D&F2111/03	5,618.93 (5,191.93)
01-Sep-2022 Less Unspent,"GrantMoney TEK A&P ASSN returned 01/09/2022		427.00
Total Commitments		31,078.00
Net Funding Remaining (Including commitments)		-

Summary of Movements in Discretionary Funds
As of 15/06/2023

	Event Funding Code	Carry Forward 2021/22	Annual Plan Budget 2022/23	Plus Income / Grants 2022/23	Less Expenditure 2022/23	Net Funding Remaining 2022/23	Less Commitments 2022/23	Funding Remaining after Commitments
Huntly	GL 1.204.1704	71,765.00	24,026.00	-	22,121.51	73,669.49	7,300.00	66,369.49
Meremere	GL 1.209.1704	16,227.00	1,550.00	-	-	17,777.00	330.43	17,446.57
Ngaruawahia	GL 1.205.1704	92,372.00	20,999.00	-	69,228.41	44,142.59	37,002.99	7,139.60
Tuakau Urban CB	GL 1.215.1704	41,651.90	15,437.00	-	9,831.96	47,256.94	29,100.17	18,156.77
Raglan	GL 1.206.1704	12,348.00	14,271.00	-	11,786.13	14,832.87	6,916.52	7,916.34
Tamahere Community Committee	PR 2GD-25600-E-0-1700-0000	6,211.00	4,000.00	-	627.90	9,583.10	150.00	9,433.10
Taupiri	GL 1.208.1704	6,007.00	1,624.00	-	4,142.24	3,488.76	-	3,488.76
Te Kauwhata	GL 1.207.1704	30,612.00	4,198.00	-	11,429.71	23,380.29	13,069.00	10,311.29
Rural Port Waikato CB	GL 1-216-1704	36,240.10	13,441.00	-	11,053.82	38,627.28	2,173.91	36,453.37
Heritage Project Fund	PR 5CG5-7000-E0-1700-0000	134,744.00	-	-	-	134,744.00	4,999.00	129,745.00
Conservation Fund Grant	GL 1-525-1410	93,366.00	-	-	13,820.14	79,545.86	22,503.66	57,042.20
Heritage Assistance Fund	PR 5CG56000-E0-1700-0000	52,381.00	20,051.00	-	-	72,432.00	-	72,432.00
Events Management	PR 5CG-51000-E-0-1700-0000	30,651.00	-	-	(427.00)	31,078.00	30,651.00	427.00
Community Aspiration Blueprint	PR 5CG-60000-E-0-1700-0000	-	1,647,559.00	-	1,255.75	1,646,303.25	-	1,646,303.25
Rural Ward	GL 1.202.1704	31,737.00	30,963.00	-	36,956.57	25,743.43	4,025.00	21,718.43
Mayoral Fund	GL 1-202-1705	13,069.00	8,000.00	-	11,175.62	9,893.38	-	9,893.38
Community Administration Funding	GL 1-210-1689	61,905.00	20,400.00	-	300.00	82,005.00	7,019.48	74,985.52
Totals		731,287.00	1,826,519.00	-	203,302.77	2,354,503.23	165,241.17	2,189,262.07

To	Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Community Engagement Report
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	Karlene Rhind, Senior Community Engagement Advisor
Authorised by:	Clive Morgan, General Manager Community Growth

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

To update/inform the Council on the role of the Senior Community Engagement Advisor and Council engagement activities that the role is presently supporting.

2. Executive summary

Whakaraapopotanga matua

In the time as the Senior Community Engagement Advisor there have been multiple disruptions to my work, these have included the EOC response and recovery work, and supporting the Iwi & Community Partnerships space resulting from enduring vacancies.

Therefore, a predominant feature of my workload for the past six months has been supporting different teams on engagement with mana whenua and providing collegial support to our remaining iwi team member.

There have been several opportunities for Community Engagement where a mixture of staff and elected members have been the face of Waikato District Council in the past six months.

These have included hearing the issues and concerns from the people of Port Waikato | Te Puaha o Waikato after the adverse weather events at the beginning of the year, which are stressed by the Adaptation Management Plan needs. An ongoing kaupapa which has and continues to demand a lot of attention from several staff and elected members.

Tainui Games and the Tuurangawaewae Regatta, where community members had an opportunity to ask questions and share concerns, along with seeing Waikato District Council participate in two great mana whenua led events that people from all communities attend.

The most prestigious of council events was the unveiling of both Kiingi Tūheitia Potatau Te Wherowhero VII and King Charles III portraits, which saw the partnership between council and Kiingitanga take centre stage, and the kaupapa providing an opportunity to strengthen the relationship between both.

There are other examples, and more coming up where we can take opportunity to have a presence in the different communities within our district. The value of which is to build relationships, build trust and hear the voice of community directly from residents and rate payers.

The Long-Term Plan will feature significantly in the year ahead, therefore thinking has begun for plans of engagement with our communities, mana whenua, businesses, and other stakeholders.

The role of the Community Engagement function is to support better outcomes for our communities and Council with regard to infrastructure, safety and wellbeing matters. Aims include facilitating and supporting more timely and effective community & stakeholder involvement.

To support this outcome with infrastructure a Community Engagement Advisor has been appointed and will join Waikato District Council on 3 July 2023, working directly with the EPMO team on all infrastructure engagement work.

I have recently developed a draft Community Engagement Strategy and Community Engagement Framework which currently sits with my peers for feedback. Following which, I will share with relative internal teams, then Community Boards, Community Committees, and mana whenua representatives for feedback, before presenting to Council for input, and subsequent approval.

As stated previously a Maaori engagement strategy would ideally underpin the Community Engagement Strategy. With ongoing vacancies in the Iwi & Community Partnerships Team the development of this strategy has been unattainable to date, however the newly appointed Community Resilience Strategic Advisor is developing a Maaori Engagement Strategy for Community Resilience work, which I've provided some input to. The intention is for the Maaori Engagement Strategy to be used across council to give consistency to council's approach. To provide guidance to all staff at Waikato District Council on how to engage with Maaori, mana whenua, iwi, hapuu & marae. It is expected this strategy will be amended by the new Iwi & Community Partnerships Manager, when in place.

As mentioned previously the crossover of community engagement and Iwi engagement is fluid and great synergy existing between both teams to help achieve Council outcomes, whilst continuing to nurture and protect relationships with Iwi, hapuu, marae and the broader community.

Methods of engagement have included online, in person hui with community, mana whenua, and key stakeholders. As stages of development progress, the engagement methodology will be enhanced to support the direction of improving our engagement outcomes. A key component will be the finalisation of the Community Engagement Strategy and Community Engagement Framework, to be adopted in council for all teams to operate from.

3. Staff recommendations Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

That the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee receives the Community Engagement Report.

4. Next steps Ahu whakamua

The next steps include continued development of the community engagement culture (understanding and behaviours), continuing to build and strengthen relationships and development of the Community Engagement.

The development of a new Community Engagement Strategy is envisioned to align with the development of the Maaori Engagement Strategy as an underpinning platform. The intention is that these two strategies will work in line with the future of local government and support Council's efforts to improve our effect to Te Tiriti o Waitangi.

5. Attachments Ngaa taapirihanga

There are no attachments for this report.

To	Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Recovery Plan - Cyclone Gabrielle
Date	28 June 2023
Report Author:	Reece Turner, Recovery Manager
Authorised by:	Kurt Abbott, Executive Manager, Projects & Innovation

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

To provide the Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee with councils Recovery Action Plan as a result of Cyclone Gabrielle's impacts.

2. Executive summary

Whakaraapopotanga matua

The Civil Defence Emergency Management Act 2002 requires Council to improve and promote the sustainable management of hazards in a way that contributes to the social, economic, cultural, and environmental well-being and safety of the public and the protection of property.

As part of our recovery from Cyclone Gabrielle, the Recovery Office have gained a thorough understanding of the cyclone's impacts and actions required by Council and its partners to create more resilient communities.,

Three recovery environments, or parts to recovery, have been identified to meet the needs for this recovery effort, built/natural, social/economic and rural environments. The cultural environment is both interwoven as the 'golden thread' throughout the recovery environments and recognised in partnership. The Recovery Plan is a live document and will from time to time need to be iterated to support community aspiration that are derived from community and stakeholder engagements and new intelligence.

3. Staff recommendations

Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

That the Sustainability & Wellbeing Committee endorses the first iteration of Waikato District Council's Cyclone Gabrielle Recovery Plan.

4. Discussion

Koorero whaimaarama

National Recovery Environment

The Cyclone Recovery Unit (CRU) has now been established to coordinate the cyclone recovery across all government agencies from within the Department of Prime Minister and Cabinet (DPMC) and has taken the lead from National Emergency Management Agency (NEMA). Waikato District Council are required as per the national planning model to create a Recovery Plan to guide its implementation of the recovery actions.

Recovery Objectives

Within the Recovery Plan, actions are tailored to overcome the issues and future risks associated with Cyclone Gabrielle.

At a high level, the Recovery Office aims to understand the impacts of this event on the built and natural environment to assist to reduce future exposure to hazards and their associated risks. Within the economic & social environments we aim to understand and meet psychosocial impacts of this event to support the cultural, emotional, and physical well-being of individuals and communities. Finally, within our rural sector we will support and liaise with primary industries to understand the rural impacts.

Recovery following Ex-Tropical Cyclone Gabrielle will bring about a 'new normal' for many. It is acknowledged that recovery is complex. For this recovery to be effective, we need to identify and address the short, intermediate, and long-term needs of our communities. We aim to anticipate, monitor and be flexible in our response to the changing nature of the recovery activities to ensure strong and enduring community outcomes.

Captured within our Recovery Plan (attached), are a number of goals which will help to support our communities and build resilience:

- Families and Whanau, Business and Communities are well supported.
- Build Resilience to Future Emergencies.
- Regeneration of the Economy.
- Rebuild Impacted Infrastructure.
- Economic support targeted to support businesses most impacted, including business continuity.

To realise the aspirations of the Recovery Plan, several key activities are summarised below and expanded on within the plan.

The key activities are:

- Create Community Connections through public information.
- Work with Iwi and Marae to build resilience and prepare for emergencies.
- Delivery appropriate community activities and events.
- Embed Red Cross training within our communities.
- Enable Community Response Planning.
- Understand the essential needs of individuals and whaanau/families.
- Embed Navigator or Case Manager into affected communities.
- Understand and deliver funding opportunities.
- Long-term resilience planning for our roading network.

Plan Considerations

Public information is key during the recovery effort. Effective communication with our communities will help to build confidence in the ability of the council to lead the recovery, with in turn will give our communities the confidence to invest in their own recovery.

Close engagement with the communities is critical when making decisions regarding restoring and regenerating the area to ensure that it meets community needs.

Every agency involved in the recovery process must ensure that there is a common message to the community and that confusion is minimised to the public to reduce stress and anxiety. A range of communication channels will be used, and technical information will be conveyed simply.

Psycho-social considerations are considered an important element of community engagements. Existing community networks will be used wherever possible, and over time the focus will shift from larger groups to smaller groups with more complex and/or specific needs (affected homeowners).

Opportunities will be actively provided for meaningful involvement in decision-making by communities. Similarly, opportunities for the communities to ask questions of technical experts and senior officials will be planned.

5. Attachments

Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 - Local Recovery Plan



CYCLONE GABRIELLE 2023

Local Recovery Plan for the Waikato District

Contents

Recovery in Our District	2
Purpose	3
What is Recovery?	3
Our Principles	4
Our Goals.....	5
Our Recovery Engagement	6
Our Recovery Environments.....	6
Recovery Structure	7
Information Management	7
Co-ordination and inter-agency collaboration	7
Risk	7
Cyclone Gabrielle.....	8
Our Recovery Objectives and Activities	11
FAMILIES/WHANAU, BUSINESSES AND COMMUNITIES ARE WELL-SUPPORTED.....	12
Essential Needs	12
Navigators.....	12
Funding Opportunities	12
Damaged Homes	13
BUILD RESILIENCE TO FUTURE EMERGENCIES.....	14
Work with iwi and relevant marae to build resilience and preparing for emergencies	14
Community activities and events	14
Community Response Planning.....	14
COMMUNITY CONNECTIONS THROUGH PUBLIC INFORMATION	15
Strategic Communication Advisor	15
Community Hub	15
Public information and consistent messaging.....	15
SUPPORT TO OUR RURAL SECTOR	16
Rural Support Trust.....	16
REGENERATION OF THE ECONOMY	16
Economic support targeted to support businesses most impacted, including business continuity.....	16
REBUILD IMPACTED INFRASTRUCTURE	17
Short term repairs	17
Long-term resilience planning.....	19
Exit Strategy	20
Recovery Actions	21



Recovery in Our District

Our Recovery Action Plan provides the strategic direction and activities for restoring and enhancing our district following the Cyclone Gabrielle. It is a roadmap for rehabilitating our communities in a future focused way, making the most of opportunities and paving the way towards a more resilient future.

This approach enables a coordinated effort of actions and processes that need to be, or have been, put in place to manage the recovery process. Three recovery environments, or parts to recovery, have been identified to meet the needs for this recovery effort. The cultural environment is both interwoven as the 'golden thread' throughout the recovery environments and recognised in partnership.

Recovery following Ex-Tropical Cyclone Gabrielle will bring about a 'new normal' for many. It is acknowledged that recovery is complex. For this recovery to be effective, we need to identify and address the short, intermediate, and long-term needs of our communities. We aim to anticipate, monitor and be flexible in our response to the changing nature of the recovery activities to ensure strong and enduring community outcomes.

To do this effectively, community will be the focal point of the recovery process.

Purpose

Our Vision and Community Outcomes set the goals we want to achieve in everything we do. Our vision embraces the growth and changes we face across the district. Our vision is that we work together as a district to build liveable, thriving, connected communities as our townships grow.

Our approach to recovery is to be agile, meaning that as we progress, we will adapt and review our approach aiming for the best outcome for our communities. This plan provides trigger points to ensure that we are always reflecting on what has been achieved, to ensure we move forward in the best way possible.

Recovery is an inclusive process, and our Recovery office will work alongside residents, businesses, farmers, partners, and iwi throughout to identify and implement practical solutions to enable longer-term resilience options for our communities in climate and emergency management.

Given our risk landscape, it is important for us to take deliberate steps to improve our resilience and protect the prosperity and wellbeing of our communities, focusing on four environments, built, rural/natural, economic, and social. Each of the actions we are taking to support these environments is based on our collective knowledge of the risks and vulnerabilities that we experienced during Cyclone Gabrielle. Our long-term goal is to reduce or eliminate these physical impacts because we understand that emergencies have far greater implications than only the physical damage.

What is Recovery?

Recovery is a developmental, remedial, and iterative process with the main objective of efficiently organising the resources available to restore communities to the point where normal social and economic activities resume. It's how we work with our communities, after the initial response, to rebuild and rehabilitate.

It's more than rebuilding infrastructure. It is about supporting people to rebuild their lives and restore their emotional, social, economic, and physical wellbeing. The way these factors interact has a direct impact on recovery outcomes for people.

The short, medium, and long-term recovery after an emergency is directed by legislation but its success is dependent on the collaboration of the agencies, partners and individuals involved. Recovery often lasts many times longer than the response to an emergency, involves a far greater level of planning and management and is a very complex process. There are many challenges to this recovery; for example, psychosocial impacts, population movement, significant damage to homes and land, and the high numbers of people affected. The sudden change and uncertainty is challenging for those affected.

Getting to know and understanding our communities is essential. Conversations with communities about what they value, what drives social-cohesion and culture, and what their strengths and vulnerabilities are will be needed. This is more than just knowing the community, it is about being able to identify critical infrastructure, understanding what the critical success factors for recovery will be and how to manage, prioritise and communicate them.

Many factors will influence recovery, such as the community, time, and the scale and consequences of the land instability and floods. Once we understand the full extent of the harm caused. Recovery is not static but dynamic and will change over time. For this recovery to be effective, we need to address the short, intermediate, and long-term needs of the community, and be flexible to the changing aspirations and expectations of the community.



Figure 1: Stages of the recovery process

The mechanism of emergency management in our communities is applied across four R's. These are Reduction, Readiness, Response and Recovery.

Recovery is closely linked to reduction, which is council business. What are we learning from these high impact events is knowledge that can be applied to our decision-making in land-use, development, infrastructure upgrades and strategic planning.

Readiness and response are our preparedness and ability to respond to the needs of our community in an emergency and includes our own resilience as an organisation.

Our principles

To be able to achieve our recovery goals, the following principles will guide our work:

- Protect the health, safety and security of people, animals, and property.
- Locally led, regionally and nationally supported.
- Responsive to the concerns of the community.
- Community engagement is central to recovery decisions.
- Responsive to the concerns of the community.
- Supporting and enabling community wellbeing.
- Recognising and enhancing Iwi values and aspirations.

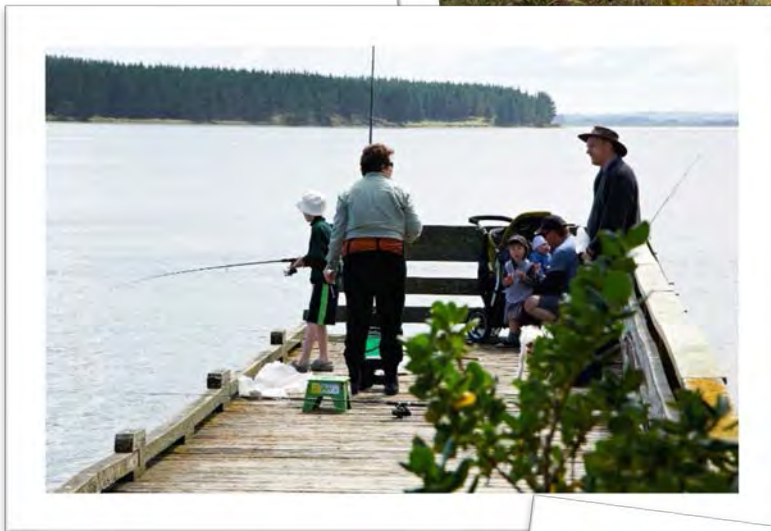


Our Goals

In these early stages of recovery, it is about getting people back into their homes, making people feel safe, and supporting individuals, whanau, businesses, and farmers. This is achieved through accessibility of information, funding, and communication. While doing this, we need to be future focused, and we need to make the most of opportunities to ensure positive change for the future.

Built & Natural

Understand the impacts of this event on the built and natural environment to assist to reduce future exposure to hazards and their associated risks.



Economic & Social

Understand and meet psychosocial impacts of this event to support the cultural, emotional, and physical well-being of individuals and communities.

Rural

Support and liaise with primary industries to understand the rural impacts.



Our Recovery Engagement



Our Recovery Environments

Our approach to addressing the impact across the environments is to look for efficiencies and dependencies to how we address the impacts. We have combined our social and economic environments with the activities led by our Waikato District Council Economic and Community-Led Development Team.

We have combined our built and natural environments to address the physical impacts of the flooding. These activities are addressed by a virtual team including WaterCare and the Waikato District Alliance, led by the Waikato District Council Planning & Policy Manager.

We work collaboratively with our partner agencies to monitor and address activities across our rural environment, and recovery support is managed by our Resilience Team.

A significant amount of work has already gone into addressing the short-term recovery needs for the district, with many short-term actions already completed. This plan aims to address the medium- and long-term issues for recovery.

Recovery Structure

The Recovery from Cyclone Gabrielle will require a sustained and coordinated effort across recovery partners and the community. The Local Recovery Manager coordinates the planning and delivery of our activities and provides leadership across our recovery team. The Waikato District Council Infrastructure Committee provides governance to the recovery activities.

Information Management

Information management is a challenge during recovery, due to the need to bring together information from a wide variety of sources and collate information in a way that informs decision-making. Information requirements during recovery usually comprise:

- welfare needs and residential building assessments at a property scale.
- public and commercial building damage assessments
- lifelines utilities damage assessments, which often apply to multiple infrastructure providers, and
- environmental damage assessments.

Robust information management processes will be established and used throughout the recovery. Wherever possible these will be based on the processes used during response to ensure continuity of information.

Co-ordination and inter-agency collaboration

The recovery will involve a wide range of central, regional, and local agencies and government departments. Within the recovery structure, clear roles, responsibilities, and accountabilities will be established, including the sharing of information and data across the public sector. The various agencies and stakeholders will be engaged throughout the recovery activities.

Risk

Risks, caused by external and or internal events, that have potential to have significant impact on the achievement of recovery objectives. Council has the following risk management mechanisms in place to help re-build infrastructure in the event of a natural disaster:

- Commercial insurance for underground assets and some arterial bridge assets
- Disaster recovery funds
- Roading budgets for both emergency works and minor events in addition to the disaster recovery funds.
- Ability to repurpose budgets.

For large scale events that have been declared, Council receives further financial assistance to cover the emergency response and recovery.

A risk register is used to identify and monitor existing and emerging risks.

Risk Appetite

The key element of success during recovery is that the priorities and deliverables across all parties are aligned. Misalignment can ultimately lead to delays in delivery and increased costs. In practice this means that there is a mismatch between the recovery structure, the risk appetite of responsible and support agencies and recovery deliverables.

Other factors that may influence recovery efforts include:

- Budgets, planning and timeframes for all agencies involved in recovery.
- Staff resourcing limitations.
- Central government election timeframes and budget announcements.
- Notice of transition period and the expiry of powers provided in the CDEM Act 2002

Cyclone Gabrielle

Ex-Tropical Cyclone Gabrielle landed in Aotearoa on 12 February 2023, impacting most of our Northern District and parts of the Central Waikato. Gale force winds and severe rainfall caused widespread damage including road closures due to slips and trees down, power outages across the district, and rising river levels.

MetService described Cyclone Gabrielle as one of the worst storms to hit Aotearoa New Zealand in living history causing shocking impacts to the North Island. Between the 12th and 14th of February, parts of Aotearoa New Zealand recorded rainfall amounts of 300-400mm, wind gusts of 130-140km/h and waves were recorded as high as 11 metres along some parts of the coast.



Waikato District Council declared a state of emergency on 13 February 2023 to respond to impacts across the Waikato district. Followed by a further local declaration by the Group Emergency Management Office which covered the Waikato Civil Defence Emergency Management Group Area (Waikato Region).

The National Emergency Management Agency established a national response structure and a National Crisis Management Centre (NCMC) to coordinate a national response and a national state of emergency was declared on 14 February 2023.

Waikato District Council moved to recovery on 3 March 2023 when a national transition period was put in place for Northland, Auckland, Waikato, and Taranaki District.

The Waikato district sustained significant damage to homes and the infrastructure network in the northern parts of the district.

Council completed Geo-technical and Building Inspections and red stickered 6 properties (property is deemed uninhabitable) and yellow stickered a further 14 properties (which can be entered but residents not able to stay there) in port Waikato due to property specific land instability.

Furthermore, another 19 properties in the vicinity of the landslides were deemed safe to inhabit upon the completion of an Geotech assessment. To understand and establish the risk of further land instability, an extensive Geotech investigation is being carried out behind properties on Maunsell Road in Port Waikato.

Summary of Impacts

Essential Needs

During the cyclone, needs of community were supported by community led centres in Port Waikato, Onewhero and Pukekohe, together with marae in Port Waikato, Mangatangi and further abroad. Centres and marae were supported by Waikato District Emergency Management, particularly in Port Waikato where there was a substantial provision of essential items such as groceries and personal care items.

Evacuations

Evacuation of all low-lying properties between Tuakau and Port Waikato took place based on known impacts from the Auckland Anniversary event. A number of homes had communicated with local contacts that they had been previously flooded and based on current intel it was expected that they would experience worse flooding caused by Cyclone Gabrielle.

Iwi

Local iwi and hapu organisations, such as Waikato-Tainui and Ngaati Tamaoho were heavily involved in the response, supporting whaanau and community groups by providing essential items and support.

Remote Communities

Most of the impacted communities are somewhat remote, and this has meant consideration needs to be given to lifeline requirements needed to support these communities in future events.

Port Waikato-Tuakau Bridge Road is a significant vulnerability with both slips and flooding occurring in many locations along the road.

Power and internet access is also compromised in our remote communities – cell tower sites do not hold charge long enough to account for lengthy power outages. The removal of copper landline exacerbates this issue.

Rural

Farm and agricultural land in Wairamarama and Onewhero were affected by flooding and landslide. MBIE intervened swiftly via the Rural Support Trust (RST) to allow farms access to the Adverse Weather recovery packages to support farmer welfare and clean up needs with the assistance of Task Force Green.

Stormwater

Slips onto properties on Maunsell Road blocked the drainage system resulting in flooding to properties and sustained pumping of water was required to clear the water from properties.

Waahi Tapu Sites

Through engagement with local Iwi and Hapu, one significant site within Port Waikato has been identified as requiring consideration if changes are made to the stormwater system as the result of future resilience work.

Sewerage

Septic tanks on some residential properties and the Port Waikato Campground were flooded.

Homes

7 red placard properties, 13 yellow and 34 white – the majority of which are on Maunsell Road. It is important to note that this number of placards applied may increase or decrease depending on what is found out through continuing monitoring and assessing of each site.

Roading

Roading infrastructure is causing major anxiety and uncertainty amongst rural communities, particularly along the west coast of Waikato. Roding access is severely compromised and ongoing reliability is tenuous at best, particularly with any forecast rain event.

Solid Waste

Clean up requirements were widespread throughout Port Waikato.

Our Recovery Objectives and Activities

OBJECTIVE	Families/Whaanau, Businesses and Communities are well-supported in their recovery	We will work to create partnerships with our communities to support resilience to future emergencies.	Strategic Communications and Public information are developed for affected communities.	Support to our rural sector	Regeneration of the Economy	Rebuild impacted Infrastructure
DESCRIPTION	<i>Getting people back into their homes, making people feel safe, and supporting individuals, whanau, businesses, and farmers.</i>	<i>We need to be future focused, and we need to make the most of opportunities to ensure positive change for the future.</i>	<i>Close engagement with the communities is critical when making decisions regarding restoring and regenerating the area to ensure that it meets community needs.</i>	<i>Where possible, the primary sector community returns to a new normal.</i>	<i>Sustainable business activity is re-established, and where possible, enhanced.</i>	<i>Our planning and infrastructure provide resilience to natural hazards and flooding so that our communities' safety is improved and maintained.</i> <i>Within each of the four environments we will seek to undertake assessments, recognising natural, cultural, and historical heritage and understand the overall impact to inform recovery.</i>
ACTIVITIES	Understand the essential needs of urban and rural landslide and flood affected individuals and whanau.	Working with iwi and relevant marae to identify and prioritise opportunities for building resilience and preparing for emergencies.	A dedicated strategic communication advisor is appointed.	We support the Rural Support Trust in leading recovery with rural communities	Economic support targeted to support businesses most impacted, including business continuity.	Short term repairs are undertaken with priority
Establish a Navigator role to provide wrap around services for those who need long term support	Coordinate and deliver community activities and events.	A Community Hub is established to support our most affected community.	Rural Advisory role to be created within WDC, to better inform rural outcomes		Environmental damage assessments are undertaken as required to inform planned activities.	
Identify and communicate funding opportunities to the community	Community Response Plans are prioritised in affected areas.	Multiple mechanisms for the community to receive information			Long-term resilience planning	
Damaged homes are repaired to a liveable standard		Coordination with recovery agencies to provide timely and consistent messaging to affected homeowners and the community				

FAMILIES/WHANAU, BUSINESSES AND COMMUNITIES ARE WELL-SUPPORTED

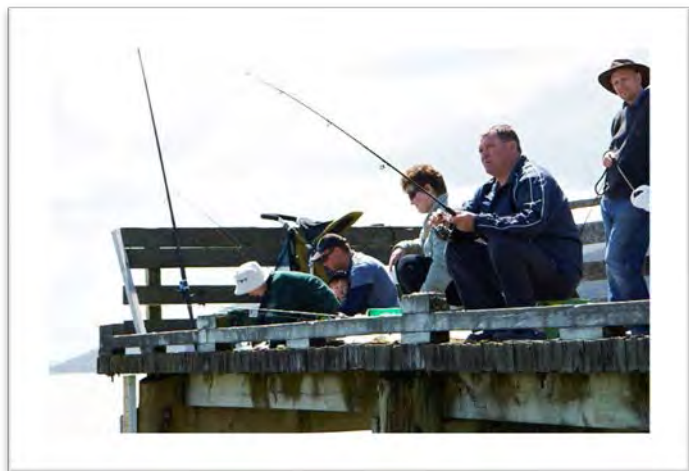
Essential Needs

Data to inform essential needs for individuals and families/whanau will be gathered through our regular engagement activities, including needs assessment, navigators, community hub and collaboration with partner agencies.

Navigators

As with any disaster, we need as much help as we can get to repair the physical damage caused, but also the emotional and social impacts resulting from the impacts of ex-tropical cyclone Gabrielle. With this in mind, we aim to create opportunities to rebuild and strengthen our communities – to help restore community resilience.

Navigators identify and communicate with relevant agencies to ensure wrap around services are delivered across sectors to their clients. Agencies approached by Navigators may include Te Whatu Ora, New Zealand Police, Ministry for Social Development, Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment, Ministry of Primary Industries and other non-government organisations and community groups.



We have appointed Navigators from within our organisation to help support our residents in homes that were stickered because land instability and flood damage. The Navigators provide a single point of contact for our most affected residents to receive support and advice as they work through the process of repairing their homes and properties.

Funding Opportunities

Ministry for Social Development Funding

The Ministry of Social Development are the lead agency on the ground and are funding community groups to provide community support in affected areas. They are using navigators to ensure individuals are provided access to the relevant support funds or programmes.

Community groups and contracted social sector providers of food and other supports, including services for disabled people, have mobilised quickly to support people, families and communities affected by the recent North Island floods and Cyclone Gabrielle. The increase in demand for this support is putting a strain on services and community-led initiatives.

A Community Support Package administered by the Ministry for Social Development aims to relieve some of this pressure so community groups and contracted providers can continue to deliver their response and recovery efforts for people, whānau and communities. This package is available until 30 June.

Mayoral Relief Fund

A Mayoral Disaster Relief Fund has been established and contributions have been made from Stuff and from the Government via the Waikato Civil Defence Emergency Management Group. The fund is also available for general donations from the public. The Mayoral Disaster Relief Fund will be used to help the community recover and are aimed at providing one-off assistance for extraordinary circumstances.

Department of Internal Affairs

The Department of internal affairs is supporting our recovery through the provision of funding that supports our recovery structure and resilience planning.

Waka Kotahi

Waka Kotahi is supporting the rebuild of impacted roads through funding of infrastructure and planning.

Other agencies that could potentially assist with funding in the community:

- Waikato Civil Defence Emergency Management Group (WCDEM)
- National Emergency Management Agency (NEMA)
- Te Puni Kōkiri – Ministry of Māori Development (TPK)
- Te Whatu Ora - Health New Zealand
- Ministry for Primary Industries (MPI)
- Ministry of Business, Innovation and Employment (MBIE)
- Heritage New Zealand

Damaged Homes

We will continue to support our residents who have been impacted by the cyclone. This includes liaising with owners of damaged buildings and identifying opportunities to assist them to work with specialist professionals who will give them advice on solutions.

A consistent approach to addressing the hillside instability is encouraged for homeowners for efficiencies in cost and application of the mitigation measures.

Further work and funding are required in this space to enable Waikato District Council to provide the relevant support to those affected.

BUILD RESILIENCE TO FUTURE EMERGENCIES

Work with Iwi and relevant Marae to build resilience and prepare for emergencies

Our Community Resilience Strategic Advisor will assist in the delivery of our Recovery Plan to enable the building of resilient people and infrastructure within the Maaori community. It will play a key role in the development of a strategic framework for how council will sustainably build relationships now and into the future, that assists to create resilient ecosystems that support marae. This will be delivered by providing specialist advice and solutions on complex issues, focusing on outcomes for the marae community and Council.

The role will also provide support to Council by assisting in the enhancement of our emergency management practices across the four Rs to achieve greater outcomes for Māori in emergencies.

Community activities and events

This activity aims to create opportunities to rebuild and strengthen our communities – to help restore community resilience. We are working on creating opportunities across the district, including the coordination of events for affected residents to reconnect with their community as well as to strengthen the emotional and social wellbeing of individuals and family/whānau, many of whom have been displaced.

A community events and activities programme will be established that enlivens affected communities, enhances community connections, and builds community resilience.

Opportunities will be actively provided for meaningful involvement in decision-making by communities. Similarly, opportunities for the communities to ask questions of technical experts and senior officials will be planned.

Psycho-social considerations are considered an important element of community engagements. Existing community networks will be used wherever possible, and over time the focus will shift from larger groups to smaller groups with more complex and/or specific needs (affected homeowners).

Red Cross training

To support the wellbeing of our communities, we will facilitate Red Cross Psychosocial First Aid training (PFA) to be delivered across our district. PFA provides training using best practice based on international resources and publications. It offers knowledge and tools for anyone who is supporting someone in distress following any event, including a natural disaster.

Community Response Planning

As a result of the cyclone, we have had an increased interest from our communities in developing community response plans. The impact distribution of Cyclone Gabrielle assisted in forming the area prioritisation along with other locally known risks and community appetite.

A consultancy will be engaged to assist in working with Port Waikato to further develop their community response plan as a priority.

The most important part of the plan development is community-led development and ownership. This is important for the sustainability of the plan in the long-term and the activation of the plan by the community in the event of an emergency. Our Emergency Management Advisor will facilitate, coordinate, and provide education with communities to develop and implement their plans.

COMMUNITY CONNECTIONS THROUGH PUBLIC INFORMATION

Strategic Communication Advisor

The strategic communications advisor will lead engagement and communication focusing on long-term recovery support for our communities. We understand the ongoing need for clear and consistent messaging to assist our communities in their rebuild and psychosocial needs. The role will ensure coordination and strategic planning for engagement activities at Port Waikato and complete and deliver reporting, governance and operational.

Community Hub

We are working toward establishing a community hub in the north of our district that will provide a shared facility that:

- ensures co-ordinated care in an ongoing way by co-location of wellness providers and support agencies.
- offers a single point of access for assistance for all recovery needs (building, wellness, insurance)
- provides 'triage' and appropriate needs assessment.
- delivers more intensive case management functions as required.
- provides information management, including management of a data base with proactive follow up of registrants.
- Coordination with recovery agencies

Public information and consistent messaging

Public information is key during the recovery effort. Effective communication with our communities will help to build confidence in the ability of the council to lead the recovery, with in turn will give our communities the confidence to invest in their own recovery.

Close engagement with the communities is critical when making decisions regarding restoring and regenerating the area to ensure that it meets community needs.

Every agency involved in the recovery process must ensure that there is a common message to the community and that confusion is minimised to the public to reduce stress and anxiety. A range of communication channels will be used, and technical information will be conveyed simply.

Information will be communicated regularly, in multiple languages as required by the community and as early as possible.



SUPPORT TO OUR RURAL SECTOR

Our Waikato District Council Economic Development Advisor is working with Ministry of Primary Industries about the ongoing support required to the rural sector. We will respond to the feedback and the changing needs of the sector as new information is provided.

In the longer term a rural advisory role is being investigated within Waikato District Council, to better inform rural outcomes.

Rural Support Trust

We support the Rural Support Trust in leading recovery with rural communities and individual farmers to provide information and good access to quality and timely advice and support to assist farmers to become fully functional as soon as possible. This support has also included networking events and activities to provide respite from recovery activities, as well as psycho-social support for those identified as 'in need'.

- Enhanced Taskforce Green
- Rural Assistance Payments
- IRD: Income equalisation, flexibility on submissions and penalties in place.
- RST psycho-social support: Community BBQs and information sessions. Trained facilitators attend these events and can advise farmers on support available.
- National Feed Coordination Service: Federated Farmers have been contracted by MPI to stand up the Feed Coordination service.
- MPI funding grants

Impact assessments:

Assessments are underway for agricultural and horticultural industries and a clear picture may not be available until after harvest.



REGENERATION OF THE ECONOMY

Economic support targeted to support businesses most impacted, including business continuity.

We have completed economic outreach with businesses in Port Waikato and Raglan to identify direct impacts of the cyclone on businesses. To address the impacts, we will work in partnership with agencies already undertaking activities on a short and long-term basis in the communities. Working with other agencies avoids duplication of effort and avoids putting additional work and expectations on the community.

Waikato District Council have two Community-Led Development staff members who regularly engage at Port Waikato and are contributing to community resilience work being undertaken in the area.

We will offer business continuity advice and support to affected businesses impacted by the cyclone. This will be resourced from our Waikato District Council Resilience Team.

REBUILD IMPACTED INFRASTRUCTURE

Short term repairs

Waikato District Alliance

A significant programme of works has been undertaken to open all the local roads impacted by the cyclone. Roading work has now shifted from immediate response to costing and commencing a more permanent repair programme that will proceed over the next few years.

Roading maintenance and/or repairs (flood damage) of impacted roads has been categorised and an estimated timeframe has been provided on the expected timeline for full recovery.

- Category A and initial response can be undertaken during general cyclic maintenance activities and require no engineering input. To be undertaken 22/23 Financial Year.
- Category B requires engineering input. To be undertaken 23/24 Financial Year.
- Category C sites require testing, investigation, and design by a qualified engineer. These are the larger hard structures like retaining walls, MSE walls and similar. To be undertaken 24/25 Financial Year.

WaterCare

The stormwater system at Port Waikato has been an increasing focus of the community and Watercare prior to the cyclone, including cultural considerations associated with part of the stormwater system running through a waahi tapu site.

Work on clearing the debris and sediment is largely complete, however this is only a temporary solution. Vegetation clearance, drain clearance and levelling will continue with other areas requiring investigation due to adverse slope issues.

WaterCare recognises that another storm event will again damage the network and longer-term solutions to upgrade sections such as the drain between Maunsell Rd and the hillside are still being investigated and further informed by the findings of the Tonkin & Taylor Geotech report. The longer-term options around covering some vulnerable open drains and/or reticulating more of the catchments will be investigated in the context of affordability and long-term resilience. A desktop analysis has been conducted to understand the current network capacity and hydrology run-off.

The feedback from previous community events has highlighted the deficiencies in the stormwater system and consideration will be made to the conversion of open drains to closed drains, issues and options and include flow path/drainage to the swamp where the waahi tapu site is located.

Open Spaces

An estimated total of 300 trees and branches came down during both the Auckland Anniversary storm and Ex-Tropical Cyclone Gabrielle. Additional contractors were required to manage this work in an

efficient way, to ensure the safety of the public and the associated clean up and removal of debris. The clean-up and debris removal is an ongoing activity and has incurred a significant cost to undertake.

Te Puaaha o Waikato (Port Waikato) - Sunset Beach access

As part of the extensive storm damage at Port Waikato, the accessway to Sunset Beach was washed away and collapsed from the sustained storm surge during the cyclone. It was identified that any immediate fix would likely be temporary, and a longer-term sustainable solution should be sought to ensure visitor safety and ongoing pedestrian and vehicle access to the beach. On consultation with local iwi, community, and Waikato Regional Council, a temporary accessway was reinstated for emergency access to enable surf lifesaving operations to continue over the summer season and through to easter.

Ongoing planning and consenting will occur over the winter period to establish a sustainable accessway that will reduce the risk of the current one and be fit for purpose for both pedestrians and vehicles. An ongoing maintenance program is proposed to ensure the sustainability of the future accessway.

Ruapuke impacts

There have been two significant washouts within the Ruapuke area that require remedial works to occur. The most substantial is the Swann Access Road to the Northern end of the beach, which has severed access to 100 metres of carpark and requires an upgrade of the drainage system relating to the unsealed road access.

The second area of works is related to the Papanui Point access road which requires reinstatement of a small area of access track and resealing of aggregate to ensure vehicle access is reinstated to acceptable levels.

Walkways

Many walkways across the district have been impacted to varying degrees by erosion from either waterways, or overland flow relating to poor or insufficient drainage. Although many of the impacts have been managed by minor capital works, the Otamanui and Waipa Esplanade tracks will require extensive works to reinstate, and in the case of the Waipa, an entire re-route of some 150 metres has been impacted. This remedial work has currently been quoted and the re-route of the Waipa Esplanade track is likely to occur in the 2023/24 financial year.

Environmental Damage Assessments

On Friday 14th April 2023 a site visit to Port Waikato was undertaken by geotechnical engineers from Tonkin & Taylor to assess the entire hillside (Putataka) behind Maunsell Road. They reported that at least 15 slips were assessed. Report findings are expected to be back with Waikato District Council in June 2023.

The outcomes of the Tonkin & Taylor report will assist to determine future risk to property and considered as part of planning, building and infrastructure decision-making including:

- Undertake further building assessments and Geotechnical investigations to reassess houses as necessary.
- Assess if current District Plan provisions (via the Proposed District Plan) are sufficient to control new building and development.
- Determine actions required under the Building Act 2004
- Inform stormwater works and plans for Maunsell Road.

The information provided will be shared with homeowners. Our focus is to continue to support those affected and our intent is to empower homeowners to make decisions in the short and longer-term regarding their properties. The information will also be used to advise on the removal of stickers and provide recommendations.

Long-term resilience planning

We will focus on building resilience into our roading network to natural hazards and flooding so that our communities' safety is improved and maintained.

An assessment will be carried out on the key transportation routes to identify what is required to make them more resilient to weather impacts. This assessment includes infrastructure and adjacent land and may require planting of private land.

The resilience planning for key roading links is proposed to be explored through a business case to Waka Kotahi with matching Council funding. Funding has been made available prior to the 2024 LTP allowing this resilience work to begin earlier than previously planned.

The current recovery activity needs to be cohesive with the larger-scale resilience work currently taking place in Port Waikato with respect to the adaptive management planning for coastal erosion issues.

The Port Waikato Resilience Group (community and Council staff) met on 4th May 2023 and continued a discussion around coastal erosion issues and options. These issues include erosion affecting private properties on Oceanview Road as well as the Council car park at the community hub, and associated plans for public toilet replacement.

Community and Council staff members expressed an interest in widening the discussion to resilience and planning issues for the township, across multiple hazards and issues, which is what was originally envisioned when the adaptive management project began in 2020.



Exit Strategy

The Recovery from Cyclone Gabrielle will undertake a formal exit from recovery to business-as-usual based the completion of key activities. This will include the receipt of the geotechnical assessment and removal of placards from residential properties. An assessment and revision of the action plan will be undertaken to determine if further assistance is required in the long term and determine the appropriate management required to support long-term recovery.

Additional consideration will be made to requirements in the long term for:

- Planning and reporting of long-term recovery issues
- On-going public information and communications
- Further events for communities to discuss unresolved issues and to continue to participate in their recovery.
- On-going case management by Navigators
- Some outstanding actions are envisaged to be wrapped into the Adaptive Management Planning for Port Waikato specific issues.
- Lifeline activities will be included in the current roading activity management plans/infrastructure plan. Stormwater findings will be included into the Waters activity management plan.
- a capture of learnings through reflection and formal debrief process.

Recovery Actions

Objective	Activity	Duration S/M/L	Recovery Environment	Agencies	Funding Status	Funding sources	comments
Families/Whaanau, Businesses and Communities are well-supported in their recovery	Understand the essential needs of urban and rural landslide and flood affected individuals and whanau.	Short / medium	Social	WDC MSD	Funded	Waikato District Council	
	Establishment of Navigators to provide wrap around services for those who need long term support	Short 14 July 2023	Social	WDC MSD DIA	Funded	Department of Internal Affairs	
	Funding Opportunities are identified and communicated to the community.	Short Ongoing	Social	WDC MSD MBIE DIA			
	Damaged homes are repaired to a liveable standard.	Medium Ongoing	Built	WDC MBIE EQC Homeowners		Insurance Mayoral Relief Fund	Variable depending on individual circumstances
We will work to create partnerships with our communities to support resilience.	Working with Iwi to identify and prioritise opportunities for building resilience and preparing for emergencies.	Medium / Long	Social	WDC	Funded	Department of Internal Affairs	
	Coordinate and deliver community activities and events.	Short / Medium	Social	WDC MSD RST	Funded	Waikato District Council	
	Community Response Plans are prioritised in affected areas.	Short	Social	WDC	Partially Funded	Mayoral Relief Fund Department of Internal Affairs Waikato District Council	
Strategic Communications and Public information are developed for affected communities.	A dedicated strategic communication advisor is appointed.	Short 14 July 2023	Social	WDC	Funded	Department of Internal Affairs	
	A Community Hub is established to support our most affected community.	Short	Social	WDC	Funded	Waikato District Council	
	Multiple mechanisms for the community to receive information are identified based on need	Short	Social	WDC MSD RST	Partially funded	Waikato District Council	Dependant on ongoing engagement requirements
	Coordination with recovery agencies to provide timely and consistent messaging to affected homeowners and the community.	Short	Social	WDC	Funded	Waikato District Council	

Support to our rural sector	We support the Rural Support Trust in leading recovery with rural communities.	Short / Medium	Social/Economic	RST WDC	Partially Funded	Ministry for Primary Industries	
Regeneration of the Economy	Economic support targeted to support businesses most impacted, including business continuity.	Short		WDC MBIE MPI MSD WRC	Variable depending on individual circumstances	Funded across agencies Economic Cyclone Gabrielle Business Recovery Grant Waikato District Council	
Rebuild impacted Infrastructure	Short term repairs are undertaken with priority	Short to long term	Built	WDA WDC	Roads \$18million	Partially Funded	
			Built/Natural	Waka Kotahi	Open Spaces \$813K	Partially Funded	Significant costs have exhausted budget allocations
			Built		Stormwater	Partially Funded	Costs will be determined on completion of investigation including Geotechnical Report
	Environmental damage assessments are undertaken as required to inform planned activities.		Built/Natural	WDC WDA	Geotechnical Investigation	Funded	
	Long-term resilience planning	Long-term	Built	WDC DIA WDA Waka Kotahi	Roading Resilience	Funded	

To	Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Adoption of Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	James Fuller, Senior Environmental Planner
Authorised by:	Clive Morgan, General Manager Community Growth

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

The purpose of this report is for the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee to recommend to Council to seek approval to finalise the Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy (Attachment 1) in accordance with section 83 (Special Consultative Procedure) of the Local Government Act 2002 (Act).

If adopted the two current strategies Conservation Strategy 2004 and the Esplanade Strategy 2000 will be revoked.

2. Executive Summary

Whakaraapopototanga matua

Waikato District Council has reviewed its Conservation Strategy and Esplanade Strategy and decided it was appropriate to combine both strategies and incorporate updates relating to the Council's vision and community input. Following the Special Consultative Procedure under Section 83 of the local Government Act (2002) Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy was developed. Staff seek the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee to recommend to Council to adopt the Strategy (Attachment 1).

The Strategy provides a long-term plan to achieve the Council's vision of liveable, thriving, and connected communities while working towards maintaining, protecting, and restoring indigenous biodiversity throughout the district. The approach outlined in the document is more relevant and action-orientated than previous document(s).

The Strategy will:

- Provide overarching guidance to communities, iwi, hapū, businesses, and neighbouring local authorities to deliver on conservation vision, goals, and actions identified;
- Build on the current protections under the District Plan with support and collaboration for Taiao; and
- Guide council staff on goals and actions specifically relating to the Taiao (including restoration access, collaboration, and education) that should be prioritised within existing budgets and resources, as well as projects and activities that should be considered for funding through the development of the Council's Long-Term Plans (LTPs).

3. Staff recommendations Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

Staff recommend that the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee recommends that Council:

- a. adopts the Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy; and
- b. revokes the Waikato District Council – Conservation Strategy (2004) and Esplanade Strategy (2000).

4. Background Koorero whaimaarama

Staff began a review of the Conservation Strategy (2004) in 2020 and identified several shortcomings. Waikato District Council staff established a steering group that included councillors and relevant staff across the business to participate in the review of the Conservation Strategy and develop a new set of vision, goals, and a series of actions, with implementation and monitoring processes to ensure progress over time.

The steering group developed key themes to set a vision for the district. The themes included the following:

- Improve the Taiao (nature) and indigenous biodiversity within the Waikato district;
- Support and collaborate with others (including knowledge sharing and education);
- Collaborate with mana whenua; and
- Promote access, where appropriate.

Several key stakeholders were also contacted (Waikato Tainui, Waikato Regional Council, Federated Farmers and QEII Trust representative), and their views were incorporated into the draft Strategy.

The draft Strategy was brought to the Strategy and Finance Committee on 3 August 2022. The Strategy and Finance Committee approved the public release of the draft Strategy for public consultation on 15 August 2022 for a period of six weeks. Overall, 21 submissions were received (one submission was received late). It is noted that many of the submissions were made by stakeholders, who were initially involved and consulted during the initial development of the Strategy.

On the 5th of April 2023, the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee appointed a hearings and deliberations panel comprising Cr Gibb (chairperson), Cr Beavis, Cr Keir, Cr Ngataki, Cr Turner, and Cr Eyre to consider the 21 submissions and make decisions on changes to the draft Strategy. The Strategic Planning Team summarised the submissions and undertook preparations for the hearing and deliberations panel.

The submissions were grouped by topic, and each submission point was addressed where possible with a recommendation from the staff to accept or reject (in part or as a whole) the submission and the reasoning for this. The hearings and deliberations panel came together on 18 April 2023, worked through these submissions, and decided on the response to submissions and changes proposed to Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy.

The updated draft Strategy was brought back to the Sustainable and Wellbeing Committee on 17 May 2023 and approved for design with allowances for minor wording changes and corrections.

5. Discussion and analysis

Taataritanga me ngaa tohutohu

Council received 21 submissions through this public consultation period between 15 August and 27 September 2022. Responses were received from various submitters, including Waikato Tainui, Waikato Regional Council, Forest and Bird, Federated Farmers and QEII Trust, and several individuals.

The general themes of the submissions received focused on the following:

- General support for the revised Conservation Strategy and addition of the Esplanade Reserves;
 - Restoration of the natural environment;
 - Collaboration with iwi and the community;
 - Funding to provide appropriate resourcing from the council through staff and funding, e.g., reinstating the conservation fund or an equivalent to help landowners, restoration, and community groups;
 - Identify that People are key to seeing results on the ground;
 - Seek that the Te Ture Whaimana be at the heart of the district's conservation efforts, where a healthy Waikato River sustains abundant life and prosperous communities;
-

- Raise awareness of restoring our Taiao in the Waikato through schools and with individual landowners;
- Empower our communities with the tools and support they need to restore the Taiao in Waikato from new and existing restoration groups, predator-free groups, individual landowners etc;
- Provide safe and easy access to parts of the Taiao; and
- Create ecological corridors by linking SNAs with Council and private landowners while supporting each other.

5.1 Options

Ngaa koowhiringa

Staff have assessed two options for the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee to consider. This assessment reflects the significance level (see paragraph 6.1) and the work completed reviewing council-wide policies. The two options are noted below.

Option 1 (preferred): The Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee recommend to Council to adopt the Strategy and revoke the Conservation Strategy 2004 and the Esplanade Strategy 2000. This option will ensure that Council has a relevant Strategy to guide decision making and future work programmes that has been through and incorporated public consultation. This is the preferred option.

Option 2: The Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee does not adopt the Strategy. This option would mean that updates to the Conservation Strategy (2004) and the Esplanade Strategy (2000) will not be implemented. This would also mean the Strategy is inconsistent with the former Conservation Fund which was reviewed in 2021.

Staff recommend **Option 1** because careful consideration has been given to ensure the Strategy is relevant and provides clear direction for Council. The Strategy was developed with community participation and meets the requirements under section 83 of the Local Government Act.

5.2 Financial considerations

Whaiwhakaaro puutea

Council has a sufficient budget to finalise the Strategy.

It is important to note that on 18 October 2021 at Strategy and Finance Committee, a series of Funding Review recommendations were adopted, primarily focusing on re-aligning discretionary funds. A new Community Aspirations and Blueprints budget that includes funding for conservation groups will be available subject to an application process.

With the removal of the Conservation Fund, private landowners will no longer be able to apply under individual applications as set out in the Conservation Strategy 2004. The draft Strategy does recognise that support and collaboration for individuals are key actions of the Strategy, so more funding opportunities for landowners will need to be explored through the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan process.

5.3 Legal considerations **Whaiwhakaaro-aa-ture**

Staff confirm that the Strategy complies with the Council's legal and policy requirements and best practices.

5.4 Strategy and policy considerations **Whaiwhakaaro whakamaaherehere kaupapa here**

The report and recommendations are consistent with the Council's policies, plans and prior decisions. Furthermore, the preferred option 1 adheres to Council's engagement policy for community engagement. As suggested by the submissions, the amendments will work to achieve the Council's vision, goals and actions relating to Taiao. The Strategy continues the principles set in the Conservation Strategy (2004). Still, it extends the focus through its vision, goals, and actions to focus more on people, best practices, collaboration, and education so the Council can continue to assist in improving the district's indigenous biodiversity.

5.5 Maaori and cultural considerations **Whaiwhakaaro Maaori me oona tikanga**

The Strategy sets goals for Council's role in supporting tangata whenua aspirations, including facilitating conversations with Waikato-Tainui for iwi-led and hapū-led conservation projects that could be investigated through the Long-Term Plan process. Waikato District Council also sought further input from Waikato-Tainui, and the deliberations panel accepted that their late submission be received. Waikato Tainui's submission has been considered alongside other submitters and stakeholders. Waikato-Tainui's Environmental Plan Tai Tumu, Tai Pari, Tai Ao sets out Waikato-Tainui's position on environmental issues and policies. Management methods are referenced in the Strategy, and Council will seek to set up regular meetings with Waikato Tainui as part of the Strategy Implementation.

5.6 Climate response and resilience considerations **Whaiwhakaaro-aa-taiao**

The matters covered in the Strategy are consistent with the Council's Climate Response and Resilience Policy and Climate Action Plan and will help it meet its resilience planning outcomes. It is hoped that the protection, management, and restoration of indigenous biodiversity, support and collaboration with other parties, and education will help the district's resilience to climate change over time.

5.7 Risks **Tuuraru**

The overall risk profile is low. The strategy review process and consideration of the submissions followed a clear council process as detailed in Promapp. Any submissions with opposing or conflicting recommendations were discussed in the hearing and deliberations, and reasons for any changes were identified. The Conservation (2004) and Esplanade (2000) Strategies will be revoked as part of the introduction to the Strategy.

6. Significance and engagement assessment Aromatawai paahekoheko

6.1 Significance Te Hiranga

The decisions and matters of this report are assessed as of low significance in accordance with the Council's [Significance and Engagement Policy](#).

6.2 Engagement Te Whakatuutakitaki

The Hearings and deliberations panel considered the 21 submissions received over a six-week public consultation period. It is noted that engagement was challenging at times, particularly due to the various constraints imposed because of the spread of covid. This being said, the focus has primarily been on iwi and key stakeholders. Key stakeholders have made up most of the submissions on the draft Strategy and generally agreed with the document's themes but requested specific changes.

Highest level of engagement	Inform	Consult	Involve	Collaborate	Empower
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Tick the appropriate box/boxes and specify what it involves by briefly explaining the tools used to engage (refer to the project engagement plan if applicable).</i>	<i>A steering group was put together with staff and councillors to review the Strategies (Conservation and Esplanade). The steering group identified key stakeholders who were consulted with as part of the drafting and development of the Strategy. The stakeholder inputs and public submissions were considered and incorporated into the Strategy.</i>				

State below which external stakeholders have been or will be engaged with:

Planned	In Progress	Complete	
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Internal
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Community Boards/Community Committees
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Waikato-Tainui
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Affected Communities
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Affected Businesses
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Other; Federated Farmers, New Zealand Walking Access Commission, Waikato Regional Council, Queen Elizabeth II National Trust, Hamilton City Council, Waipa District Council and Auckland Council.

7. Confirmation of statutory compliance Te Whakatuuturutanga aa-ture

As required by the Local Government Act 2002, staff confirm the following:

The report fits the Council's role and the Committee's/Community Board's Terms of Reference and Delegations. Refer to the Governance Structure	Confirmed
The report contains sufficient information about all reasonably practicable options identified and assessed in terms of their advantages and disadvantages (<i>Section 5.1</i>).	Confirmed
Staff assessment of the level of significance of the issues in the report after consideration of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy (<i>Section 6.1</i>).	Low
The report contains adequate consideration of the views and preferences of affected and interested persons taking account of any proposed or previous community engagement and assessed level of significance (<i>Section 6.2</i>).	Confirmed
The report considers the impact on Maaori (<i>Section 5.5</i>)	Confirmed
The report and recommendations are consistent with Council's plans and policies (<i>Section 5.4</i>).	Confirmed
The report and recommendations comply with Council's legal duties and responsibilities (<i>Section 5.3</i>).	Confirmed

8. Attachments Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 – Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy

TAIAO (NATURE) IN THE WAIKATO

**STRATEGY
DOCUMENT**

CONTENTS



GLOSSARY	01
INTRODUCTION	02
What is Taiao?	03
VISION, GOALS, TAIAO	04
Vision	04
Goals	04
Potential methods to achieve Taiao	04
The benefits of protecting Taiao	05
Council and Crown Reserve/Land (SNA's) showcase best practice	07
Categories of Taiao	08
Restoration Opportunities	09
Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)	10
Strategic context	11
Elements of the Waikato district and Taiao	12
OUR DISTRICT	14
State of the Environment	15
Opportunities for improving Taiao	16
Significant Natural Areas	17
BRINGING IT TO LIFE AND CONSIDERATIONS	18
Taiao and partnership with iwi/hapuu	18
Collaboration	19
Biosecurity and other tools	20
ACCESS	21
Esplanade reserves	21
Esplanade strips	22
Access strips	22
Summary on access	23
ACHIEVING OUR VISION AND GOALS THROUGH ACTIONS	24
Focus Area 1	24
Focus Area 2	25
Focus Area 3	26
Focus Area 4	27
Focus Area 5	28
MONITORING AND REVIEW	29
Report Card (Example)	30
Resources	31

GLOSSARY

Bioveg2

Is an example of the Waikato Regional Council's initial satellite imagery-based layer identifying Indigenous Forest remnants.

Carbon Sequestration

Carbon Sequestration is the process by which carbon dioxide is absorbed during photosynthesis and is stored as carbon in biomass (trunks, branches, foliage, and roots).

Engineering with Nature (Native Engineering)

Engineering with Nature is defined as the intentional alignment of natural and engineering processes to deliver economic, environmental, and social benefits efficiently and sustainably through collaborative processes.

Restore (ecology)

The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to reinstate indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes, and cultural and visual qualities.

Significant Natural Areas (SNAs)

Any area that, on the commencement date, is identified in a policy statement or plan as an area of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna (regardless of how it is described).

State of the Environment (SOE)

State of the Environment monitoring helps with policy development and informs decision-makers of the consequences of actions and changes in the environment. It involves setting targets, monitoring, analysing, and interpreting data, then reporting findings, and continuing this process over time.

Taiao

Is Maaori for nature, consisting of natural resources; it speaks to the natural environment that contains and surrounds us. It encompasses all of the environment and its offspring.

Ecosourced

Refers to the propagation of native plants from local areas and the planting of them back within the same geographical area.

Conservation Covenant

A covenant is a legal agreement between the landholder and the covenanting agency about how an identified area's natural values will be protected.

Indigenous Biodiversity

Means the living organisms that occur naturally in New Zealand, and the ecological complexes of which they are part, including all forms of indigenous flora, fauna, and fungi, and their habitats.

INTRODUCTION

This Strategy identifies broad priorities for protecting and enhancing Taiao, including indigenous biodiversity values, to improve conservation and ecosystems.

This Strategy encompasses and links to Waikato district's open spaces, reserves, esplanades, private land, wetlands, peat bogs, the Waikato and Waipaa Rivers, and tributaries. The rivers and some tributaries originate outside the district and at Ngaaruawaahia, the Waipaa and Waikato Rivers converge all the way downstream to Port Waikato. Waikato District Council partners with Waikato Regional Council to sustainably manage natural resources.

The Waikato district once contained large areas of forest and wetland. The dominant forest species were typically kauri in the north, podocarp in central locations and a combination of rimu and

tawa in the south. Variations of forest species were seen between coastal and inland areas. The major wetland areas were northeast of Hamilton and around the lower Waikato River. Indigenous lowland vegetation was modified by Maori and then primarily replaced with exotic pasture by European settlers to establish the district's social and economic foundation.



What is Taiao?

Taiao is “nature” and much more; it is the earth, the natural world, the environment, and our country. Taiao speaks to the natural environment that contains and surrounds us. It encompasses all the environment, its offspring and mauri.

BECAUSE WE ARE BORN OF THE EARTH, AND IT IS BORN OF US, WE HAVE AN ETERNAL CONNECTION TO TAIAO - THE EARTH, SKY, AIR, WATER, AND LIFE ARE ALL INTERDEPENDENT.

Taiao is about finding our way forward by forging an interconnected relationship with the environment based on respect.

That interdependency lies at the heart of our Taiao methodology. Te Whakapakari I Te Taiao towards environmental enhancement is the goal of Waikato-Tainui. The enhancement approach aims not to maintain but, through our actions, to improve the quality of the environment for future generations.

Waikato Regional Council (WRC) have mapped indigenous biodiversity at a regional level. The Waikato District Council spatial overlay is a subset of the regional data set. WRC used a comparison study of indigenous ecosystem cover, both historical and current, and this has provided an overview of what we have today.

Discussions about biodiversity have also tended to revolve around protecting Significant Natural Areas (SNAs) (as dictated by Section 6 Resource Management Act 1991), rather than about how to maintain biodiversity across the landscape. While SNA sites are critical dimensions in biodiversity management, sites seldom operate in isolation from their surrounding environment (flora and fauna moves in and out of such areas). The Waikato District Council needs to look at the entire role Taiao plays and its interactions with the wider environment.

Significant Natural Areas cover a total of 70,692.9 hectares (ha) over 697 sites. This is a mixture of international, national, regional, and locally recognised sites.

Department of Conservation (DOC) land, regional and local terrestrial sites total 25,317.69 ha which equates to 35.8% of SNA cover. A subset of the above was investigated by Leathwick (2016) and identified 127 priority sites as high-value indigenous biodiversity within the lower Waikato region zone.

Key examples of Taiao area types include:

Mangataawhiri; Managatangi; Whakapipi;

Waikato River at Tuakau Bridge; Awaroa (Waiuku);

Whangamarino at Jefferies Road Bridge;

Whangamarino at Island Block Road; Lake Opuatia (Peat Lake);

Waerenga;

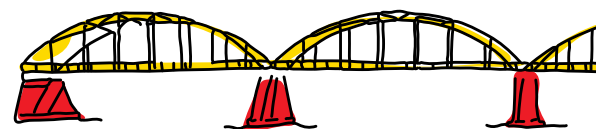
Lake Waikare;

Matahuru; Waikato River at Rangiriri; Whangape; Managawara Stream

Awaroa at Harris/Te Ohaki Bridge;

Awaroa (Rotowaro) at Sansons Bridge;

Tane Mahuta Reserve, Huntly.



VISION, GOALS, TAIAO

Vision

To foster a liveable, thriving and connected environment where the people of the district value and understand the importance of our natural systems and Kaitiakitanga.

We all work together to protect, sustain, and improve our natural ecosystems, so all can enjoy and share the benefits as the foundation for Taiao in Waikato.

The full range of New Zealand's indigenous ecosystems and species thrive from the mountains to the sea.

Goals

1. Maintain, create and improve a full range of natural habitats and ecosystems to a healthy functioning state across their natural range and genetic diversity; and
2. Support actions to conserve, maintain and restore healthy ecosystems and their ecological linkages and promote sustainable natural resource use and emissions reduction.

3. Seek collaboration opportunities to work with others, including mana whenua, to achieve the Taiao in the Waikato vision.
4. Unlock native bush and esplanade areas through access agreements and landowner support to provide for pest and weed control, walking and cycling where possible.

Potential methods to achieve Taiao

Many methods can support indigenous biodiversity and biosecurity action. These include:

- Research and monitor indigenous biodiversity, native plants, animals and other organisms and the ecosystems that sustain them.
- Funding – multiple streams (local and central government, community, iwi, NGOs, business).
- Cultural – sites containing indigenous biodiversity and taonga identification.
- Wildlife corridors – between SNAs and Council reserves.
- Biosecurity – preventing or reducing the spread of pest plants, animals and other organisms that might negatively impact natural ecosystems.
- Protected areas – Council-owned, private covenants, DOC, iwi and hapuu.
- Additional plantings adjacent to regional riparian protection areas.
- Land acquisition and bequeaths.
- New technologies – satellites, network traps, Internet of Things (sensors and cameras etc).
- Integrated planning – opportunities to enhance Taiao and manage land.
- Enabling landowners – knowledge and understanding of the benefits of Taiao and how to get started.
- Education – teaching our communities and young people the benefits of Taiao Resource Management Act tools – investigate the simplified version of protection covenants.
- New indigenous biodiversity initiatives.

**IMPROVE OUR
NATURAL
ECOSYSTEMS**

The benefits of protecting Taiao

It is more cost-effective to conserve ecosystems or stop degrading our environment than to start from scratch creating new ones in rural or brownfield areas.

Conservation and current protection (see District Plan) are no longer enough to arrest the loss of Taiao.

Investment needs to increase in maintenance/monitoring and restoration of Taiao for long-term sustainability (Proposed National Policy Statement – Indigenous Biodiversity). This means a focus on protection, maintenance, and monitoring of what you have. This can be done as non-statutory efforts through fencing and pest control while keeping tabs on the environment. Alternatively, regulatory protection can be put in places that legally require conservation and restoration.

Restoration sits on a continuum from improving ecosystems through to full recovery, as set out in Figure 1. It takes many forms, depending on the ecosystem, whether pristine or degraded. Restoration and letting nature take back what it needs on its own is passive.

ACTIVE RESTORATION SPEEDS UP THE PROCESS AND MINIMISES INVASIVE PESTS AND WEEDS.

The Restorative Continuum

Improving biodiversity, ecological health, and ecosystem services.

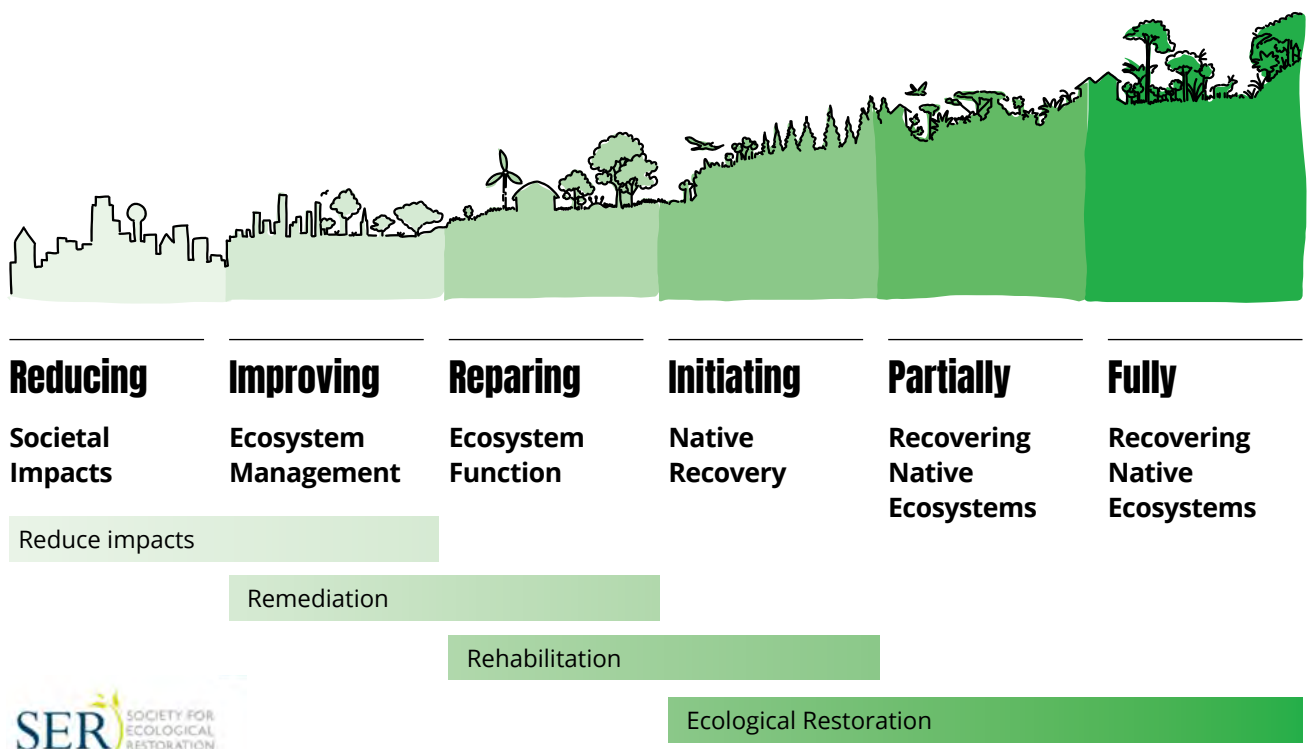


Figure 1: Restorative Continuum (restorative activities aimed at improving ecosystem functions).

An example is the United Nations Environmental Protection initiative to restore 3.5 million square kilometres of land over the coming decade.

Investment in ecosystems can accrue an environmental benefit of \$1 invested in biodiversity returning between \$3 and \$75 of economic benefits from the

subsequent ecosystem goods and services. Valuing the environment and better identifying its benefits are a critical step to protecting and restoring what we have.

Nature-based solutions are a smart investment now more than ever. (see Figure 2 below).



Nature-based solutions can deliver big economic benefits

Solution: Protect and restore forests to store carbon, stabilise soil, and slow water runoffs during intense rainfall.

Economic Benefits: Every dollar invested in restoring degraded forests would create \$7 - \$30 in benefits.

Solution: Restore wetlands to absorb and filter flood waters, store carbon, and provide clean water.

Economic Benefits: Wetland ecosystems provide services worth up to \$15 trillion including flood protection, fisheries habitat, and water purification.

Solution: Restore degraded agricultural land to produce more food for more people.

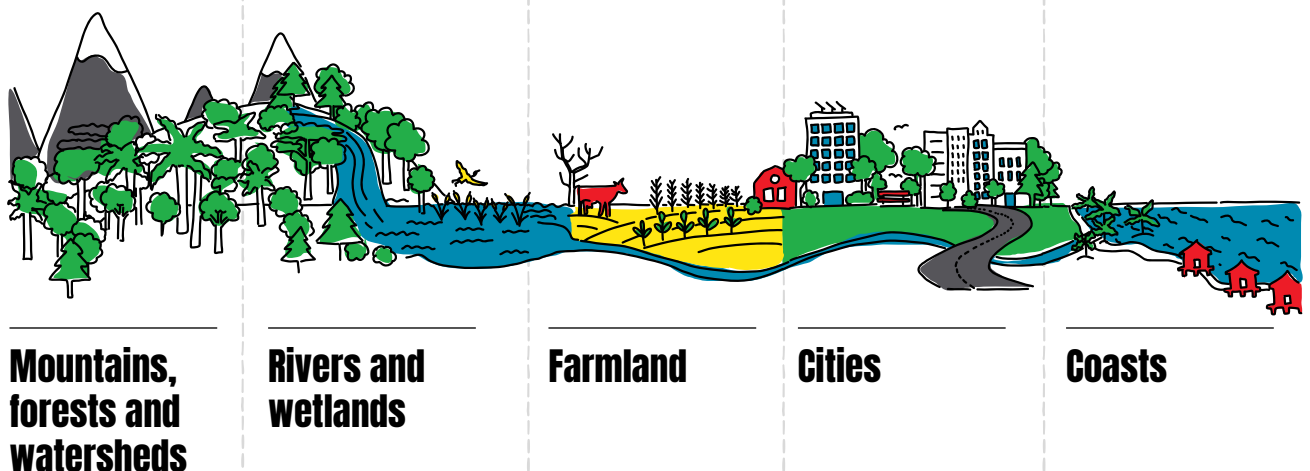
Economic Benefits: Restoring 160 million hectares of land would create \$84 billion in annual economic benefits globally.

Solution: Expand green spaces and restore forests and watersheds in and around cities to lower heat and reduce flood risks.

Economic Benefits: Restoring upland forests and watersheds could save water utilities in the world's 534 largest cities an estimated \$890 million each year.

Solution: Protect and restore mangroves, marshes, and reefs to buffer coasts from storms, absorb floodwaters, and capture carbon.

Economic Benefits: Protecting and restoring mangroves could create \$1 trillion in net benefits globally by 2030.



Source: Verdone and Seidl, *Roots of Prosperity* (Forests); Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (Rivers & Wetlands); A. Wu, *How Can Restoring Degraded Landscapes Deliver Financial Returns?* (Farmland); The Nature Conservancy, *Beyond the Source* (Cities); Global Commission on Adaptation, *Adapt Now* (Coasts).

Figure 2: Nature-based solutions.

Council and Crown Reserve/ Land (SNAs) showcase best practice

The Council will showcase best practices in maintaining, managing, monitoring, and restoring Taiao in the Waikato. Where possible, these areas will also be used for education and research to enhance Taiao.

We need to embrace and create more of the stories in our district like:

Community Group example (SNAs) showcasing best practice:

From Pukemokemoke Bush Trust:

"The most recently planted area seems to be doing incredibly well, although the recent drought has taken out a few species, particularly perhaps akeake and maybe mahoe, and they'll need to be replaced, but otherwise, this area is doing very well."

The next area is a very wet area and was planted in flax some three years ago and could well do with interplanting with particularly kind kahikatea and pukatea, again the two well-established wetland plants of the area."

Private landowner example Queen Elizabeth II National Trust (QEII) covenant, (Mt Karioi area) showcasing best practice July 2022:

From Landowner:

"We are very encouraged by the regeneration in the covenants on the farm. White maire is coming up along one of the ridges, and Puriri, which is great because Wayne Bennett (Forest Flora) is finding them difficult from seed. Last month, a representative from Waikato Regional Council (WRC) walked through the areas with us and commented on the good health of the canopy."

We spotted Hinau seedlings, never seen them regenerating before; rata flowering and kohekohe fruiting in March (as right). Over the summer, we picked up the sound of a bat at dusk. The WRC rep pointed out that the mature Puriri would be good bat roosts, so we are trying to trap and bait near those trees. The WRC are contributing towards the plants, and our problem is getting enough plants. So, we asked Waikato district Could if they could contribute towards the planting preparation. In the open areas at the edges of the forest, we need to spray or cut down kikuyu grass to make planting plots."



**PHOTOS:
KOEKOHE
FRUITING AND
RATA FLOWERING**



Categories of Taiao

Conserving indigenous biodiversity and restoring ecosystems will have a positive knock-on effect on the climate. Specific economic capture of tangible benefits might include sustainable wood, improved agricultural yields and eco-tourism revenues.

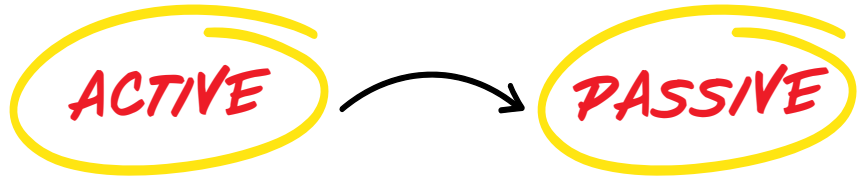
Non-valued elements include clean air, water, pollination, pest control, nutrient recycling, carbon sequestration, reduced animal-transmitted diseases and greater resilience to extreme weather and

natural disasters. In comparison, roads and bridges don't generate returns themselves, but they are foundational to increased economic benefits through the movement of goods and services. We value this infrastructure but do not apply the same principles to Taiao.

- **Forests - Threats:** encroachment from urban development and agriculture, pollution, invasive pests, and wildfires.
- **Restorers:** Replanting native trees; conserving plants and animals, and restoration areas. There are also economic benefits from controlling pests through better native bush retention and protection of native fauna.
- **Wetlands – Threats:** Irrigation, dams, canalisation and agricultural drainage, pollution
- **Restorers:** Controls on water extraction, restoring water flows to wetlands, wastewater treatment.
- **Peat bogs - Threats:** Peat extraction, drainage for agriculture, infrastructure, fire, overgrazing and pollution.
- **Restorers:** Re-wetting, conservation and stock exclusion.
- **Cities/towns – Threats:** Urban sprawl, waste, and emissions from industry and traffic.
- **Restorers:** Better policy and planning, cleaning up waterways and former industrial sites, tree planting, and creating green spaces and urban wetlands.
- **Protect pockets of native vegetation and waterways during development.**



Restoration Opportunities



Passive Restoration - leave things alone and nature does its own thing. The contrast between fencing, pest and weed control and non-fencing native areas that have been grazed.

Active Restoration - where sites are actively weeded and pests controlled, protecting areas (fencing) and adding new native plantings to increase diversity.



Contrast between native areas fenced (some regenerating ground cover) and unfenced (mature trees and no ground cover).

Restoration is actively engineering nature:



New plantings adjacent to mature vegetation.

We actively enhance this by fencing, weed and pest control, planting and maintenance. Both options include assessing the area, soil and water conditions, tree and bush plantings and maintenance-plans over time.

It must be the right place with suitable species that are native and eco-sourced, with a variation in the types of plants including trees, bushes and grasses. WDC wants to encourage native vegetation (protection and restoration) over exotic vegetation and transition exotic forests to indigenous bush.

Planting a monoculture species is easy, and building indigenous ecosystems is challenging but more rewarding from a biodiversity perspective and more adaptable over time.

Further research is needed, but wetlands and peat bogs all have carbon-sequestering species. Where it can, the Council will help

facilitate reasonable solutions in different places and show best-practice examples on its reserves.

Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs)

The Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), also known as the Global Goals, were adopted by the United Nations in 2015 as a universal call to action to end poverty, protect the planet, and ensure that by 2030 all people enjoy peace and prosperity.

The 17 SDGs are integrated — they recognise that action in one area will affect outcomes in others and that development must be a balance of social, economic and environmental sustainability. United Nations – Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) 15 – “Life on the Land” sets out the importance of plant life on land.

“Human life depends on the earth as much as the ocean for our sustenance and livelihoods. Plant life provides 80 percent of the human diet, and we rely on agriculture as an important economic resource. Forests cover 30 percent of the Earth’s surface, provide vital habitats for millions of species and are important sources for clean air and water, as well as being crucial for combating climate change.”

Economy

Society

Biosphere



All SDGs are interlinked, but SDG 15 sits at the base of the biosphere.

11 *TAIAO (NATURE) IN THE WAIKATO STRATEGY DOCUMENT*

Strategic context

The Strategy is about maintaining and enhancing the natural environment

while achieving the best community and economic outcomes.

Emphasis should be placed on strengthening indigenous biodiversity and protecting native bush, wetlands, peat bogs and quality soils. The Taiao in the Waikato Strategy fits with New Zealand's international

obligations and the upcoming legislation, including the Resource Management Act (RMA) and Proposed National Policy Strategy – Indigenous Biodiversity.

A SUMMARY OF THE LINKAGE IS ILLUSTRATED BELOW:



Elements of the Waikato district and Taiao

The Waikato district covers 418,893ha, a strategically significant land area between two of the fastest-growing metropolitan centres in New Zealand – Hamilton and Auckland.

It is also located in the heart of the 'golden triangle' - the economic zone encompassing Auckland, Hamilton, and Tauranga, which generates over 50% of New Zealand's gross domestic product (GDP) and is home to over 50% of NZ's population.

The district therefore makes a critical contribution to the country's economy in terms of contribution to revenue generation and GDP.

The district is also home to large areas of significant indigenous vegetation. DOC is administering specific sites of significance, e.g. the Haakarimata Ranges near Ngaaruaawhia.

The Waikato River (NZ's longest river) flows through the district. It is a critical waterbody, contributing to the region's biodiversity, providing potable water for the area and neighbouring population centres. It has significant cultural

value to iwi, hapuu and Maori (Waikato Tainui and Maniapoto). The Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 recognises the river as a living entity with its own legal rights.

Some examples of well-managed reserve areas in the Waikato district:

- Waingaro Reserve – WRC recently reviewed this in a Biodiversity Monitoring report on this reserve that used an adaptation of the Kahikatea Green Wheel monitoring tool as developed by WRC.
- Coastal reserves around Raglan and Port Waikato (Whakaupoko West Franklin Landcare group, Port Waikato and Raglan Community groups) are managed well, particularly in restoration activities, and there is good community consultation in these areas.
- Haakarimata Ranges.
- Hakanoa Reserve Management Plan.
- Mount Karioi.
- Pukemokemoke Reserve.
- Taupiri Range.
- Whangamarino wetland.
- Wainui Reserve (Bush Park).



The Waikato district contains some of the country's most highly-productive soils, which are vital contributors to the country's agricultural and horticultural sectors.

Taiao in Waikato and the rest of New Zealand is under pressure. At the same time, little deliberate felling of the indigenous forest takes place, and the main threats to forests are stock browsing and plant and animal pest infestation, with climate change having more ongoing influence over time.

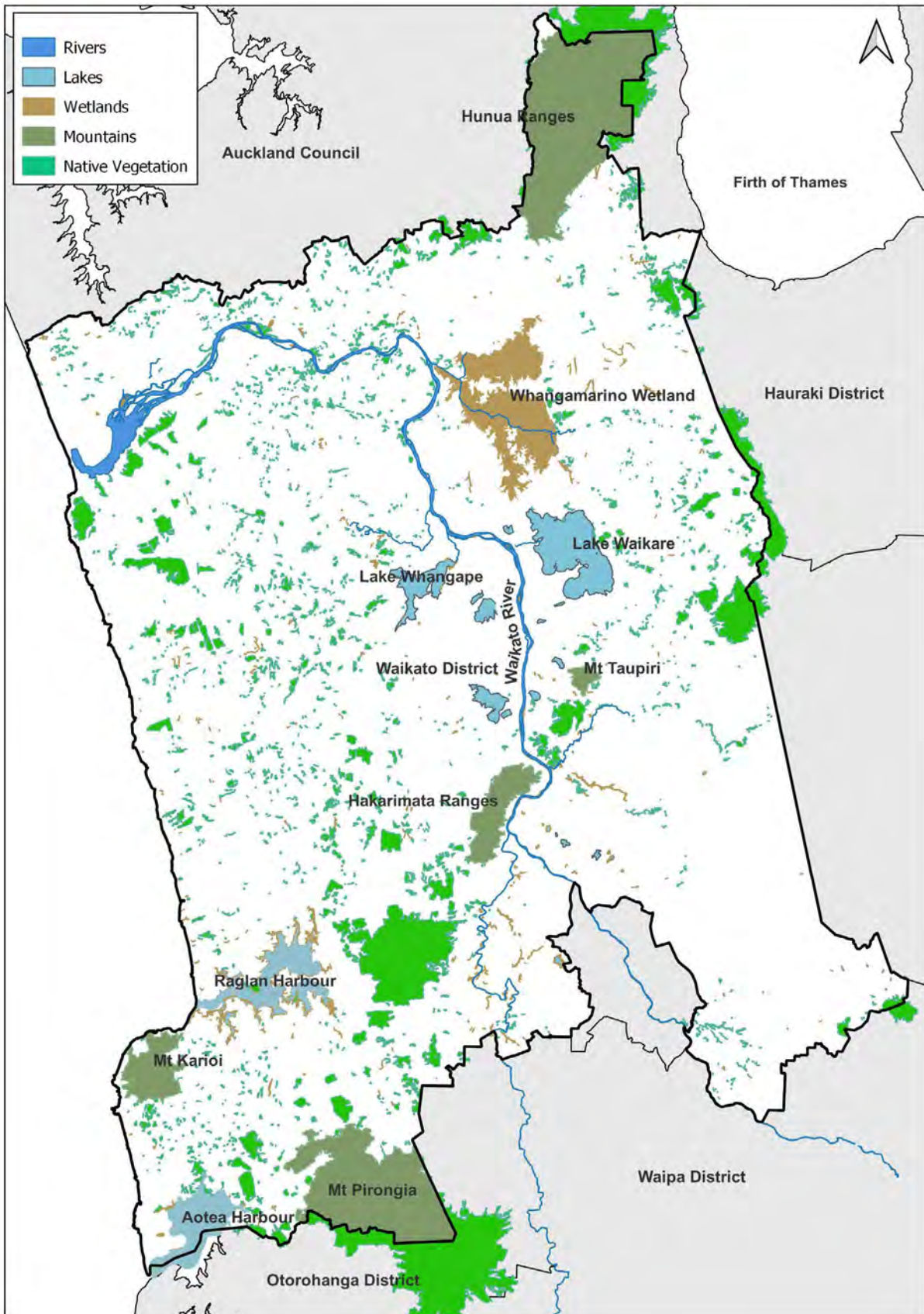
Drainage continues to pose a threat to wetlands and peat bogs. Large areas of rimu and tawa forest remain on the hill country, most of which is publicly-owned and legally protected. Most of the internationally-recognised Whangamarino Wetland is also legally protected. These areas and the lower Waikato lakes form a semi-continuous band of indigenous habitats from the northeast (Miranda) to the southwest (Aotea Harbour).

Outside of this band, indigenous vegetation and habitats have been significantly depleted; in some cases only small remnants remain. Few of these remnants are formally protected (Map 1), unless they have been covenanted as part of a subdivision (Council covenant) or through a QEII covenant initiated by a willing private landowner.

THE DISTRICT IS ALSO HOME TO LARGE AREAS OF SIGNIFICANT INDIGENOUS VEGETATION

Haakarimata Summit Track [image credit Department of Conservation].

13 TAIAO (NATURE) IN THE WAIKATO STRATEGY DOCUMENT



Map 1 - Waikato District Council Natural Environments.

OUR DISTRICT



Where we come from

The district's natural environment is one of the natural features and constraints that creates Waikato's identity and makes it a special place to live, work and play

Essential features of the natural environment include the Waikato River and its tributaries; the Waipaa River; numerous lakes and wetlands; coastlines; steep hill country and inland range landscapes; and distinctive gully systems.

Areas of particular value are identified as outstanding natural features and natural landscapes, including significant amenity landscapes.

Those with particular terrestrial ecological value are identified as Significant Natural Areas (SNAs), and the district is taking measures under the District Plan to provide and protect these areas. Through targeted restoration efforts, there is an opportunity to promote, protect and enhance these ahead of and during development.

Ecological enhancement such as restoration planting and pest control can enhance amenity values and is supported through Taiao in the Waikato.

The district's rural environment contains rural land and villages and will continue to be a central focus and integral part of our district. The rural environment and rural villages significantly contribute to the district's economy. It is vital to continue to protect the rural economy and the soil that supports activities within the rural environment.

Waikato 2070 (Waikato District Council's Growth and Economic Development Strategy) promotes sustainable farming practices by protecting outstanding landscapes, Significant Natural Areas, and rural amenities. Lifestyle opportunities are also provided within the rural environment in the Waikato district.

THESE MUST BE MANAGED CAREFULLY WITH AN EVIDENCE-BASED APPROACH IN THE FUTURE TO HELP BETTER MAINTAIN AND SUSTAIN THE RURAL ENVIRONMENT.



Links to key documents

- [National Policy Statement – Indigenous Biodiversity \(NPS-IB\) \(draft\)](#)
- [National PA Pest Management Plan \(NPAPMP\)](#)
- [Waikato Regional Plan and Coastal Plan](#)
- [Iwi Management Plans: Waikato-Tainui Environmental Plan - Tai Tumu, Tai Pari, Tai Ao, Maniapoto Environmental Plan; See WRC links for other iwi documents\)](#)
- [Waikato Proposed District Plan \(Appeals Version\)](#)
- [Department of Conservation – Biodiversity Strategy \(Kauri Dieback, Copper Skinks and Mudfish\)](#)
- [QEI – Map of Protected Land](#)
- [Protecting our natural ecosystems’ carbon sinks – Forest and Bird report: <https://www.forestandbird.org.nz/resources/climate-change-and-introduced-browsers>](#)
- [Waikato District Council Reserves Management Plans](#)

State of the Environment

As in all countries, land of high value for agricultural production is the first to be cleared of native vegetation. In New Zealand and the Waikato, the trend is for more marginal land to be removed, often for non-native forestry or development.

These pressures have led to the degradation of Waikato district native ecosystems through the loss and fragmentation of indigenous biodiversity.

Today, less than 10 percent of the indigenous forests and less than four percent of wetlands that once dominated the Waikato district remain. Pressures leading to land clearance within the district include

reclamation of land for agricultural and horticultural purposes, meeting the growing population’s housing demands and industrial/commercial development.

The region’s land area covered in indigenous terrestrial vegetation has decreased from 94 percent in 1840, to 27 percent in 2018. Since 1840 six local authority areas have lost over 80 percent of their indigenous cover (Hamilton City, Matamata-Piako district, Rotorua district, South Waikato, Waikato district and Waipaa District).

The rate of vegetation loss reduced from an average of 85 hectares per year between 1996 and 2012, to 60 hectares per year between 2012 and 2018 across the Waikato region. The most significant losses between 2012 and 2018 occurred in the lowland bioclimatic zone. Much of the recent clearance happened in the less-threatened environments (areas with greater than 20 percent indigenous cover left), with gains in the two most threatened environments (areas with less than 20 percent cover of indigenous vegetation).

Therefore, the baseline is low for the Waikato region and by extension the Waikato district. This means the importance of protecting what we have cannot be over-emphasised. Protecting remnant areas will help us sustain the Taiao while restoring our new sites. This is supported by SDG 15 – Life on the Land and where human life depends on our earth and its plants, which is becoming even more critical in the climate change era. There will continue to be emerging threats from climate-related impacts e.g. weeds and pests invading into new areas.

Climate change will increase pressures on natural systems, but we do not yet know how to respond adequately to this threat. What we do know is that the predicted climate change impacts in the Waikato could include (and the timeframes will vary):

- Warmer air and water temperatures (lakes, rivers, streams, and wetlands), sea level rise.
- Changes in rainfall patterns.

- Increases in the frequency of storms and droughts.
- Ocean acidification of coastal waters increasing impacts on inshore coastal ecosystems: aquatic flora and fauna.

These changes will adversely affect our rural areas and natural indigenous biodiversity. The conditions may allow existing and new invasive pests to impact different habitats. This could mean that native species struggle to adapt to climate changes. We also know that healthy soils, native plants, wetlands, and peat bogs can capture carbon and inhibit it from driving climate change (although this is a global issue).

While Taiao is the key focus, it will be improved by restoring the connectivity of natural areas that have become fragmented in an overwhelming dominance of the exotic landscapes. This will help increase natural resilience to climate change and our rural areas. It is integrating climate change into the Strategy where it impacts indigenous biodiversity, e.g. sea-level rise, droughts and flooding.

Opportunities for improving Taiao

Research and evidence:

- Land protection with covenants.
- Vegetation protection through community and restoration led projects.

- Fauna protection with targeted pest control.
- Waterways and esplanades through good urban management and a joined-up approach with the WRC.
- Urban (residential/commercial/industrial), low-impact design for stormwater and recognition of urban trees.
- Rural promotion of information on pest control and help to facilitate fencing bush blocks and native fragments.
- Our culture is one that values Taiao and the importance of indigenous biodiversity.
- An economy that steadily maintains and restores Taiao-based activities.

Protection and management of native flora and fauna

The Council will regularly report on the outcomes of conservation covenants partnering, providing education, and supporting (non-financial) landowners to protect native bush and waterways.

Restoration - empower (skills, knowledge and education) iwi, hapuu, communities and landowners

Set up a portal on the Waikato District Council website to help iwi, hapuu, landowners, restoration groups and community groups access restoration information.

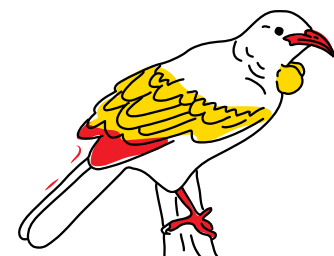
Include a range of technical information about the different areas within the Waikato and the types of vegetation present. Have critical links to other information and other organisations that can help, e.g. the Waikato Regional Council, Department of Conservation, Tai Tumu, Tai Pari, Tai Ao, Waikato Biodiversity Forum, Predator Free groups and Trees for Nature.



Propagation Table.

Coordinate with QEII for more significant-high-quality native areas where possible

Investigate a reduced covenant-costing regime for QEII covenants within the Waikato district. Map these areas and coordinate monitoring initiatives with QE II staff.



Significant Natural Areas

Significant Natural Areas (SNAs) are recorded in the Proposed District Plan (Chapters and Maps): Appeals version. Indigenous Biodiversity and its life-supporting capacity in SNAs are protected or enhanced.

The SNAs of the Waikato district: "Terrestrial and Wetland Ecosystems data" were derived from analysis and interpretation of aerial photography, along with information from ecological reports and data (where available), local environmental knowledge and limited field surveys. The data comprises an extensive yet provisional inventory and assessment of SNA of terrestrial and wetland ecosystems of the Waikato district.

The SNA layer was received as a dataset from the WRC and used in the proposed District Plan. It is noted that the information was based on a desktop assessment (aerial photography) or knowledge of significant native areas. A small percentage of landowners made submissions to the Proposed District Plan, and these areas were assessed as to whether they would meet the criteria of an SNA. These sites were either retained or removed from the SNA layer, which

now provides guidance rather than a specific rule framework.

The initial desktop analysis for the SNA layer identified 697 sites. These units could capture more than one property and, comprising an area of 70,692.9 ha (16.87%) of the Waikato district, as SNAs. The SNAs were comprised of indigenous vegetation approximately 61,292 ha (85.9%) of the total area of SNAs. The indigenous vegetation in SNAs must be protected to ensure the ongoing biodiversity in a district.

The public consultation process revealed that most landowners were motivated to protect and restore SNAs identified on their land. However, while formal protection of natural areas (e.g. conservation covenants) is ideal, the ongoing management of these SNAs (including weed and animal pest control, fencing and restoration) is a focus point for the Strategy. Currently, as drafted, the National Policy Statement for Indigenous Biodiversity exposure draft and other legislation must consider incentives for landowners to protect and restore indigenous biodiversity.

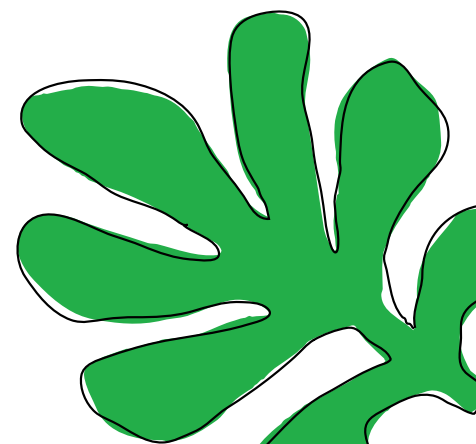
The identified SNA layers on the Council's planning maps let landowners know they have Significant Natural Areas that could be protected with opportunities for further help with restoration. The previous conservation fund provided a small contribution to applicants who undertook improvements to protect areas of high-value indigenous vegetation.

This has included support for fencing, plants, weed and pest control. Although this funding has

been redirected to community-led projects (inclusive of conservation-focused products), WDC will still provide support and education on Taiao in the Waikato Strategy.

Waikato District Council will continue to update the SNA layer on the Council planning maps in conjunction with the Waikato Regional Council. This will be an ongoing process and likely to be undertaken with meaningful engagement with property owners and ground-truthing. This is to be augmented by land-based ecological assessments as and when they can be arranged, e.g. linked to land development applications.

Non-regulatory policies discussed in this document include investigating assistance around establishing protective covenants, education, and funding ecological assessments to establish whether unmapped areas of indigenous vegetation meet one or more of the criteria in APP2: Criteria for determining significance of indigenous biodiversity within the proposed District Plan and therefore being identified as being an SNA on the planning maps. This may be undertaken in conjunction with WRC, also with an advocacy role when managing the threats from Kauri Dieback and loss of habitat to Long-Tailed Bats.



BRINGING IT TO LIFE AND CONSIDERATIONS

Taiao and partnership with iwi/hapuu

Where restoration relates to the Waikato River, the Waikato District Council recognises the signed Kiingitanga Accord and will work as a Treaty partner.

Any decisions affecting the Waikato River, its waters or management over its waters, will maintain the principle of Te Mana o te Awa. Taiao in the Waikato seeks to improve the terrestrial environments, and this will have

a corresponding improvement on the aquatic environments. Waikato District Council will work with Waikato Tainui and Waikato Regional Council to indirectly improve the Waikato River and its surrounding tributaries.

By 2025 Treaty partners, iwi, hapuu and Te Ao Maaori organisations involved in Taiao and environmental management as mana whenua and kaitiaki will be sufficiently supported. Waikato District Council aims to support them to secure appropriate resourcing to help protect and manage indigenous biodiversity, particularly taonga species in their place and associated with local Marae. Co-governance roles ensure that the Treaty Partnership is honoured through Tino-rangatiratanga, fulfilling the promise of Te Mana o Te Taiao Aotearoa, the New Zealand Biodiversity Strategy, that Treaty partners are mana whenua and kaitiaki.

The Joint Management Agreement (JMA) is Waikato District Council and Waikato Tainui's response to the co-governance of the Waikato River and Taiao in the Waikato can be used to protect and restore the land adjacent to Te Awa. Waikato District Council also has a JMA with Ngaati Maniapoto. Waikato-Tainui has signed the Kiingitanga Accord to work with the Crown as a Treaty partner in the development of legislation, policies and any other decisions affecting the Waikato River, its waters or management over its waters, with importance placed over the principle of Te Mana o te Awa.

Both agreements support the conservation and Kaitiakitanga of the district's indigenous biodiversity. Taiao in Waikato should be viewed with this lens. Where each party can help manage and restore Te Awa and Taiao through conservation, it should be progressed as an ongoing partnership as part of Taiao implementation. This will include cultural areas of natural significance so the effects of current and future pressures can be mitigated.



Collaboration

Working with private landowners/businesses

By 2026, new programmes are in place to support landowners, businesses, resource users/owners and industry in delivering more Taiao. If appropriate, incentivise or seek sponsorship to protect and restore indigenous biodiversity as a standard part of business within the Waikato district. It should not fall only to landowners - identifying opportunities for those supportive businesses will create dual benefits.

Partners

Waikato District Council explores partnership opportunities to provide funding and education to manage and restore native habitats (flora/fauna). Taps into government and regional funding where possible to accelerate restoration. Considers whether Waikato District Council could be a platform for helping groups manage the logistics of conservation work using Council systems and website to manage their efforts e.g. track investment in labour time, flora (plants) and materials (fencing, traps, fertiliser) over time.

Funding

Conservation funding is still supported, with less emphasis on individual landowners (unless they provide public or ecological

access) to more community initiatives that support employment and community health. By 2025 restoration groups and community groups have the information that lets them be appropriately resourced, growing, connected, and coordinated, with access knowledge, expertise, and information to progress their projects supporting Taiao in the Waikato. Funding opportunities to explore the following:

- Increase the funding pool for restoration so protection of Taiao is prioritised;
- Investigate funding from external providers that Council could help facilitate e.g. local businesses and clubs, societies;
- Local offsetting by businesses, developers (connecting them with landowners); Secondary CO₂ offset – collective view of the district or within catchments of 1 ha – 3,000 plants, 5m in height.
- National – Register and apply for funding with central government funding, alternative funding - businesses, lotteries etc.
- Waikato Regional Council – Funding.
- Waikato District Council – Funding and partnership opportunities.
- Waikato District Council supports other ecological partners for funding and grants rather than applying ourselves.

WAIKATO DISTRICT COUNCIL EXPLORES PARTNERSHIP OPPORTUNITIES TO PROVIDE FUNDING AND EDUCATION TO MANAGE AND RESTORE NATIVE HABITATS (FLORA/FAUNA).



Biosecurity and other tools

The control of plant and animal pests (and other risks that require positive action) needs to be recognised as the core dimension of indigenous biodiversity management.

Protecting Taiao should utilise central and local government expertise in pest control and provide this to landowners and customers as tools, knowledge, and services.

Support the development of new technologies for controlling pests, e.g. biocontrol and large-scale permanent trap networks.



Biocontrol of the weed Tradescantia (Tradescantia fluminensis) helps native seedlings sprout.

Tools and monitoring

Investigate hosting a digital platform for restoration groups or community groups to manage their funding, labour and work programmes around pest management, plantings, and maintenance. This could be replicated for multiple groups across the district. Waikato District Council is investigating an information page and whether it could be used by existing groups

to help new groups. Current pest control could use scientific and Maatauranga Maaori monitoring principles and citizen science opportunities to improve Taiao.

Digital layers available for Council and landowners

Councils maintain GIS layers to include SNAs (Significant Natural Areas), conservation covenants and Open Spaces. Waikato district

to consider hosting a webpage for restoration groups, community groups throughout the Waikato district. Alternatively, work with WRC and others to promote app's if they can achieve improvements in Taiao. Waikato District Council supports all efforts in tracking, maintaining, monitoring, and restoring Taiao.

ACCESS

Esplanade reserves

Esplanade reserves may be required when land is subdivided, reclaimed, developed (through conditions), or when a road is stopped along a riparian margin, whereby the road is vested in the Council as an esplanade reserve.

Esplanade reserves can also be created voluntarily. They are classified as reserves under the Reserves Act 1977, and land ownership is transferred to a territorial authority upon deposit (completion) of the subdivision plan. New esplanade reserves and strips should be surveyed and depicted on the cadastral maps.

The boundary of an esplanade reserve is measured from its bank where it is a river or stream, its margin where it is a lake, or from the mean high-water springs (MHWS) in a coastal area. In all cases, the landward boundary is a fixed survey line.

Accordingly, the landward boundary does not change as the water boundary accretes or erodes.

Esplanade reserves created as part of a subdivision (each allotment that abuts a waterway) will sit under Council control to manage.

THE BOUNDARY OF AN ESPLANADE RESERVE IS MEASURED FROM ITS BANK WHERE IT IS A RIVER OR STREAM, ITS MARGIN WHERE IT IS A LAKE, OR FROM THE MEAN HIGH-WATER SPRINGS (MHWS) IN A COASTAL AREA.



Esplanade strips

A rule may require esplanade strips in a plan when land is subdivided, reclaimed, or developed.

A condition may also direct the landowner to apply for resource consent for reclamation. Additionally, an esplanade strip may be created voluntarily by agreement.

Esplanade strips are legal instruments between landowners and territorial authorities; they do not need to be formally surveyed or identified on a survey plan. They can be registered on the title, but the land within the strip remains in the ownership of the landowner. Although identified on a survey plan, they do not need to be formally surveyed.

The creation of a strip, and restrictions and requirements relating to its use and management, are noted in the title and bind every party having an interest in the land. The form of the agreement and standard restrictions imposed on an esplanade strip are defined in Schedule 10 of the RMA.

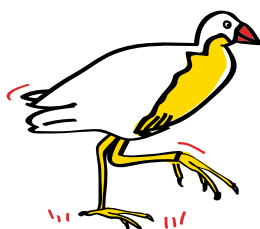
An esplanade strip can include provisions to exclude access by the public during certain times or under certain conditions (as prescribed in Form 31 of the Resource Management

Forms, Fees, and Procedure Regulations 2003).

Unlike esplanade reserves, the width of an esplanade strip remains unchanged within the same allotment. So, if a riverbank is eroded by 2 metres, the width of the esplanade strip extends beyond its old boundary by 2 metres to offset the lost ground.

Esplanade strips can be varied or cancelled by a territorial authority subject to the procedure in s234 of the RMA. Similarly, an esplanade strip can be changed, reviewed, and cancelled if a condition applies under s127-132 of the RMA.

ESPLANADE STRIPS ARE LEGAL INSTRUMENTS BETWEEN LANDOWNERS AND TERRITORIAL AUTHORITIES; THEY DO NOT NEED TO BE FORMALLY SURVEYED OR IDENTIFIED ON A SURVEY PLAN.



Access strips

Access strips can enable public access to or along waterbodies or public land.

They can be established by agreement between the landowner and the territorial authority under s237B of the RMA.

Access strips are surveyed and fixed, but their ownership remains with the landowner. The creation of a strip and restrictions and requirements relating to its public use are defined in Schedule 10 of the RMA and are set out as an easement registered against the title to the land.

Access strips may be cancelled by agreement between the landowner and territorial authority, taking into account the matters in s237B (4) of the RMA.



Summary on access

Overall, esplanade reserves, esplanade strips and access strips are a range of tools available to local government, Department of Conservation, restoration groups and community groups.

Private landowners provide public access to native bush or waterbodies on a voluntary basis. Things for all parties to consider when determining the strategic approach for native bush and esplanade areas are the form of the protection and level of management.

- The nature of the resources and the land abutting waterbodies (inclusive of coastlines).
- The nature of land uses (e.g. rural/urban/natural habitats/features and their proportions within the district).
- The possibility of developing an integrated network of access points to waterbodies through the use of esplanade reserves, strips and access strips.

The policy approach follows national and regional direction with four underlying principles, including:

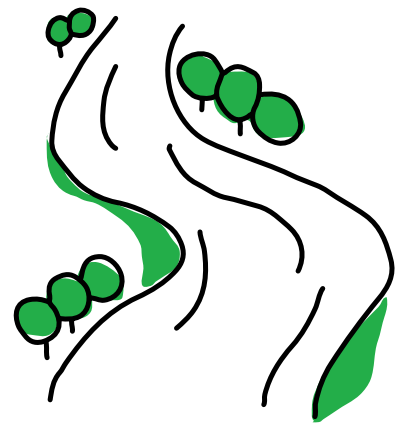
1. Adjacent private property rights must be considered;
2. Landowners are responsible for minimising the effects of land use on waterbodies;
3. Where esplanade management results in public benefits, funding should be available from public sources;
4. The Council must be cost-effective in seeking to implement the above principles.

Where possible, WDC will promote access to wider walking networks, parks, and reserves with willing landowners. The Council will treat esplanade reserves, strips and access strips based on each case's merits and focus on public access or recreation demand. Where there are significant conservation features on privately-owned riparian areas, encouragement of protection is essential.

Sustainable management, minimising conflicts, protecting public benefits, and partnering with Tangata Whenua, community and recreation groups, and private landowners will be sought. Key reserve priorities are waterbodies, including the Waikato and Waipaa Rivers, the West Coast, lakes, and others (rivers, streams, and a short east coastline area on the Firth of Thames). The Council also seeks to promote connectivity and conservation outcomes and work with conservation agencies, iwi, hapuu, restoration groups, community groups, and landowners.



WHERE POSSIBLE, WDC WILL PROMOTE ACCESS TO WIDER WALKING NETWORKS, PARKS, AND RESERVES WITH WILLING LANDOWNERS.



ACHIEVING OUR VISION AND GOALS THROUGH ACTIONS

Focus Area 1

Maintain, restore, and improve a range of natural habitats and ecosystems to a healthy functioning state in public spaces.

All focus areas and actions must consider the Strategy's vision, goals, and our partnerships with Tangata Whenua.

Action 1.1 – Illustrate Best Practice - Maintain, restore, and improve a range of natural habitats and ecosystems to a healthy functioning state in public spaces.

Waikato District Council, through this Strategy, seeks to integrate statutory and non-statutory indigenous biodiversity functions such as monitoring, research and collaborative action and showcase this on land owned and administered by the Council. The restoration of these Council areas to be guided by evidence-based best practice in plantings, weed and pest control.

This includes planting a range of indigenous natives (preferably eco-sourced) on public reserves, e.g. passive areas, pocket areas adjacent to waterways, and within esplanades, maintaining appropriate levels of pest control (weed and animal species) across the Council reserves and helping adjacent landowners with native bush areas, including restoration and community groups in weed control either through identification or active control.

Action 1.2 – Linking Taiao areas to multiple indigenous biodiversity impacts.

An essential action underpinning this Strategy is to develop a district-wide prioritisation of terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, and identify key areas as a mapped layer for future ground-truthing.

These areas have the potential to enhance existing ecosystems. Places with the potential to enhance existing ecosystems as a corridor link to multiple SNA areas in proximity and identify where the gaps might be for future expansion. Map iwi, DOC and community indigenous biodiversity initiatives to better understand the gaps in our indigenous biodiversity across the

Waikato district. The benefit of this exercise is valuable in aligning and coordinating operational work and sharing resources across all parties. We aim to establish connections with successful restoration projects outside the district e.g. Hamilton City Council - Nature in the City gully restorations.

Action 1.3 – Identifying those areas of highest priority (remnant areas not well represented).

Prioritisation - once areas (ecosystems) are mapped, they can be prioritised for restoration and active management. This includes existing and threatened conditions like weeds and pests, current control, and restoration initiatives. For example utilise national and regionally-threatened species databases to help identify high-priority areas for intervention.

Action 1.4 – Catchment and Area Planning (Integrated Catchment Management Plan).

Adopt best practice principles, e.g. Low Impact Design (LID) standards for stormwater; the road network incorporates ecological links and minimises corridors acting as barriers to ecology.

Focus Area 2

Support actions to conserve, maintain and improve a healthy ecosystem's ecological linkages and promote sustainable natural resource use and greenhouse gas emissions (reduction).

Action 2.1 – Promote Local Nurseries set up: Social benefits, training skills (e.g. Kimihia Lakes Project).

Investigate the development of a programme to support and advise people managing land with better indigenous biodiversity values. Set up a database with all projects and investigate the use of encrypted software (e.g. blockchain) to secure the information for individual landowners. This can be based on the current WDC projects and identifying willing landowners initially.

Advice and access to resources will include management and legal options that would be most useful to maintain or enhance indigenous biodiversity on properties. The information will be displayed as a dashboard.

Create a database of the existing nurseries and their capacity for people to contact and purchase plants. See if there is potential to increase capacity and scale up native propagation with current nursery providers and the capability for restoration and community groups to maintain their growing programmes and enlist schools.

Action 2.2 – Identify pockets of Significant Natural Areas (SNAs), conservation covenants and esplanade opportunities.

Link good ground-truthed SNAs and conservation covenants to Action 1.2 and Action 1.3 to existing information. Managed areas could be complemented voluntarily by legal protection through other mechanisms such as covenants or designations. Include unique linkage to other funders, including Waikato Regional Council, QEII National Trust, and Waikato River Authority. Explore a programme

to identify key native areas (logged over time) and how these could be captured, logged, and monitored over time.

Action 2.3 – Submit relevant government legislation to promote sustainable natural resource use, reduce emissions and support our rural communities (update with changing legislation).

Identify key principles to direct submissions on future legislation, including Te Ture Whaimana and Maatauranga Maaori.

Action 2.4 - Support walking access to our native environments utilising esplanade reserves and access strips with restoration groups, community groups and willing landowners.

Work with restoration groups, community groups and landowners to promote walking access (use existing esplanade reserves and strips) and help engage with private landowners to complete access (access strips) as required.



CREATE A DATABASE OF THE EXISTING NURSERIES AND THEIR CAPACITY FOR PEOPLE TO CONTACT AND PURCHASE PLANTS.

Focus Area 3

Seek collaboration opportunities to work with others, including mana whenua, to achieve the Conservation Strategy vision.

Action 3.1 – Investigate applications and platforms to track ecological data (plantings, pest and weed control) for conservation projects.

WRC app/software, Restor, Trap. NZ and iNaturalist or solutions could help manage and maintain conservation projects. There is potential for restoration groups and community groups to run and

support conservation projects. The Council will explore partnership opportunities with other Territorial Authorities e.g. Hamilton City Council's "Nature in the City" (HCC NITC) about hosting or supplying a technical option for pest and planting tracking. Consider LIBs and whether a local community group could utilise voluntary, regulatory or digital solutions with Waikato District Council support. Partner and work with HCC NITC programme projects over time to extend and embed Taiao in the community including mana whenua.

Action 3.2 – Consider how we can fund and resource improving biodiversity in the district. This could include funding education directly and linking into WRC (Enviroschools), DOC, QEII opportunities and other NGOs.

Helping, funding or non-financial opportunities for restoration groups, community groups (two or more nearby landowners).

Availability of expertise, resources, and space to help groups carry out their planning and operational work. Connecting the relevant parties to funding streams.

Help restoration groups and community groups with Health and Safety support (Council's systems and processes).

Action 3.3 – Identify areas of farmland for retirement – Carbon Credits, rates relief, funding.

Investigate key land areas with willing landowners that could be retired and explored for restoration and the potential benefits to Taiao.



THE COUNCIL
WILL EXPLORE
PARTNERSHIP
OPPORTUNITIES WITH
OTHER TERRITORIAL
AUTHORITIES

Focus Area 4

Policy, rules and regulation.

Action 4.1 – Implement the Regional Pest Management Plan.

Review and implement the Regional Pest Management Plan, provide

operational feedback on the National Pest Management Plan for kauri protection; draft Waikato Bat Strategy.

Action 4.2 – Strengthen provisions to enhance indigenous biodiversity in reviews of National, regional and district strategies and plans.

Seek to enhance indigenous biodiversity in other legislation, National and regional strategies, plans and policies with on-the-

ground skills, knowledge, and experience.

Maintain relationships with WRC – Natural Heritage and Strategic and Spatial Planning.

Make submissions on draft legislation (RMA reforms, Regional Biodiversity Strategy, Waikato Coastal Plan).

REVIEW AND IMPLEMENT THE REGIONAL PEST MANAGEMENT PLAN



Focus Area 5

Education and community engagement

Action 5.1 – Develop in consultation with WRC advice and management around best practices for Taiao.

Advice and management of indigenous biodiversity. Through education: current examples include EnviroSchools, Ka mihi ki a Ranginui, ki a Papatuuānuku, ka mihi ki te ngao o te wheiao.

Connect with the Waikato EnviroSchools programme to support and expand the education profile for early childhood centres. Schools commit to a long-term sustainability journey, where tamariki/students connect with and explore the environment. Then plan, design and take action in their local places in collaboration with their communities, particularly active restoration groups and community groups.

Augment the EnviroSchools tools with Council information and support to utilise student skills better and collaboratively plan, design, and take action on the issues they are passionate about. Information for landowners on what they can do, where to plant, what to grow and how to maintain those areas.

Action 5.2 – Support marae, hapuu, iwi, restoration groups, community groups working to enhance indigenous biodiversity by providing advice, connections, and funding, such as:

- Helping with community group advice and guidance opportunities throughout the district.
- Connecting volunteers with restoration groups, community groups for planting days.
- Seeking donations and sponsorship for Taiao projects.
- Facilitating applications for funding of group projects.
- Provide or link ecologically-sourced native plants when resources are available.

- Providing planning and technical advice (weeding, land preparation, types of plants and season/timing of planting, maintenance and pest management until the plants are established).
- Assisting with plants for iwi/hapuu and residents adjacent to parks, reserves, and esplanades when resources are available from local nurseries or other Territorial Authorities.
- Connecting with Hamilton City Nursery and others if any unallocated plants are known for restoration projects.
- Exploring whether any school horticultural programmes have propagated plants that could be utilised by iwi/hapuu and community groups.



**CONNECT WITH
THE WAIKATO
ENVIRO SCHOOLS
PROGRAMME TO
SUPPORT AND
EXPAND THE
EDUCATION PROFILE
FOR EARLY CHILDHOOD
CENTRES.**

MONITORING AND REVIEW

*THE STRATEGY
IMPLEMENTATION WILL
BE REVIEWED
REGULARLY*

This Strategy will guide staff with day-to-day decisions relating to Taiao in the Waikato and offer guidance to the community.

The Strategy implementation will be reviewed regularly and before each Waikato District Council Long Term Plan to remain current and relevant.

A Council group (Councillors and staff) will engage with key partners and monitor progress at four levels:

1. **Focus areas**
2. **Actions**
3. **Implementation/who is doing the work**
4. **Outcomes/results.**

The Council group will periodically report progress on actions to the Council and partners that will be determined as contributing to or leading each step.

Progress on each action will be reviewed by the Council group once a year. Taiao in the Waikato Strategy will be reviewed every three years. An integrated approach will be used to implement the Strategy.

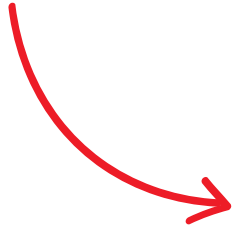
This allows decisions to be made on investment, monitoring, and reporting on indigenous biodiversity.

This task will require a commitment of resources by the Council and partner organisations once the implementation plan is established and populated by the Council and partners. Appropriate investment priorities can be set, so that the gathering and collating of data to track progress on outcomes can be finalised.

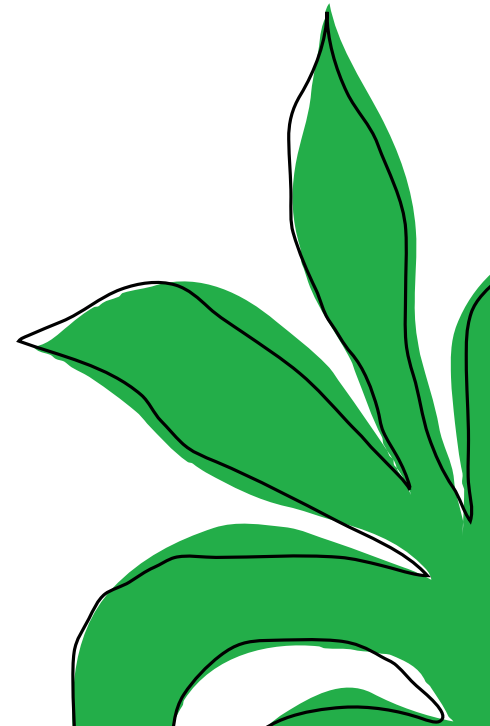
A template could be used for the Standard Report Card on each outcome as set out overleaf. Each Council group meeting will focus on one outcome in sequence, so that outcomes can be addressed on an ongoing basis.



Report Card (Example)



Starting in 2023, each outcome will form the focus of a Council Group meeting.	
Intermediate Outcome: Plantings occur in less frequently-used reserve areas (esplanades).	Intermediate Outcome: Restoration groups/ community groups help contribute to Council reserve plantings and incorporate their areas into Council reserves (Tamahere Gully system).
Indicators: Increase in vegetation coverage (natives) on Council reserves, corresponding increases in native fauna (birds, reptiles and insects).	Indicator: More groups working and recreating in native areas.
Illustrate Best Practice.	
Narrative Context: How does this fit into the regional and broader Waikato district context?	
State: Increase native plantings (indigenous biodiversity) within Council reserves. Log the number of trees planted, area and survival per annum.	



31 *TAIAO (NATURE) IN THE WAIKATO STRATEGY DOCUMENT*



Resources

[Enviroschools](#)

[Biodiversity Waikato](#)

[Go Eco](#)

[Establishing a
Nursery](#)

[Trees for Survival](#)

[Waikato Regional
Council – Planting
guides](#)

TAIAO 'NATURE' IN THE WAIKATO

*STRATEGY
DOCUMENT*



To	Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Blueprint Implementation Progress Update
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	Jim Ebenhoh, Planning and Policy Manager
Authorised by:	Clive Morgan, General Manager Community Growth

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

To provide the Committee with a comprehensive update on implementation progress on each Blueprint initiative and at a summary level across both Council-led and Community led initiatives. This is similar to the implementation update provided to the previous Council’s Strategy and Finance Committee in June 2022, and to the current Council’s Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee in February 2023.

2. Executive summary

Whakaraapopototanga matua

Using the same reporting software as is used for quarterly reporting on non-financial key performance indicators, implementation progress updates were obtained for the 340 Blueprint initiatives, contained in the Districtwide Blueprint and the 17 existing Local Area Blueprints. In addition to providing brief updates on each of the initiatives, the attached report shows that implementation of most of the Blueprint initiatives is either in progress or ongoing. For Council-led initiatives, the percentage of initiatives underway or complete is higher than for community-led initiatives, for which most initiatives are not yet underway (or progress status is unknown at present).

As the community-led development programme continues to roll out across our communities, and implementation of the new funding for Blueprint implementation and community aspirations advances further, it is expected that future reports will show a higher percentage of initiatives that are in progress or completed, especially for community-led initiatives. The current check-in with Community Boards and Committees on existing Blueprints, as part of preparation for the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan, will help refine priorities and inform Council investment in Blueprint implementation.

3. Staff recommendations Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

THAT the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee receives the Blueprint Implementation Progress update.

4. Background Koorero whaimaarama

The Waikato Blueprint (a consolidated document containing a District-wide Blueprint and 15 Local Area Blueprints) was adopted by Council in June 2019, following several months of public workshops and consultation. Information on the Blueprint is on the Council's website:

<https://www.waikatodistrict.govt.nz/your-council/plans-policies-and-bylaws/plans/blueprints>.

Additional Local Area Blueprints for Gordonton and Port Waikato were adopted by Council in July 2022.

Since adoption, significant progress has been made towards implementation, particularly through follow-up community consultation in 2020 on prioritisation and leadership of Blueprint initiatives, which informed the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan (LTP). Through 11 in-person public workshops in June and July 2020, and 136 survey responses, the priority of some of the Blueprint initiatives was revised, and every initiative was categorised as Council-led or community-led.

The revised list of prioritised and ranked Blueprint initiatives was endorsed by the Strategy and Finance Committee on 25 November 2020, as an input to considerations for the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan:

Resolved: (Crs Smith/Sedgwick)

THAT the Strategy & Finance Committee endorses the revised list of prioritised and ranked Blueprint initiatives in Appendix 1 to the staff report, as an input to considerations for the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan.

The summary of this process and the resulting priorities is contained in the [report](#) to the 25 November 2020 Strategy and Finance Committee, as well as on the Council's Blueprint webpage.

As Blueprint implementation gathered momentum through the first year of the 2021 LTP, and following creation of a new Blueprint implementation and community aspirations fund arising from a review of Council's discretionary funding, Committee members asked for more regular and methodical reporting on Blueprint implementation.

At its 29 November 2021 meeting, the Committee heard from the Planning and Policy Manager on a proposed new reporting system that would provide a 'dashboard' view of progress across all initiatives, as well as brief updates as available on each initiative.

This report provides the most recent results of this tracking system. It is similar to the implementation update provided to the Council's Strategy and Finance Committee in June 2022, and to the current Council's Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee in February 2023. It includes staff updates as well as any updates received from Ward Councillors and the relevant Community Boards and Committees.

This 'snapshot' view of Blueprint implementation progress incorporates the reporting by Council's Economic and Community-Led Development team on their community-led development programme and rollout of the new Blueprint implementation and community aspirations fund. Those activities have contributed to the updates in today's report and will continue to do so in future, but their implications are wider than just Blueprints.

5. Discussion Matapaki

Methodology

The methodology of the updates for this report was designed to improve on the previous system of asking staff for updates in the master Excel spreadsheet, which was cumbersome and could not easily generate summary reports. Instead, all Blueprint initiatives were loaded into CAMMS.Strategy, the software that is used for quarterly updates on non-financial performance (KPI reporting) and which can be linked to CAMMS.Project for better integration. Each initiative was assigned to a staff member, and updates were sought (most recently in April and May 2023), along with training and discussions about how best to use the new system.

For each of their assigned initiatives, staff were asked to choose from a drop-down menu on progress status, indicating whether the initiatives were complete, in progress, ongoing or not yet started. Staff also were asked to provide a short text-based progress update for their assigned initiatives.¹

Providing updates has been a challenge with the roughly 25% of Blueprint initiatives that are categorised as 'community-led,' because Council staff may not necessarily know yet how a community is progressing with those initiatives. Even Councillors, Community Board Chairs or Community Committee Chairs may not be aware of all the progress that may have occurred. In these cases, the result of 'not yet started' could be rephrased as 'not yet started, or unknown progress to date'.

The same applies, to a lesser to degree, to initiatives within the 'Council-led' category, because many of them are jointly owned by the Council and community. This category includes any initiative that the 2020 consultation exercise suggested should have Council involvement, not all of which are necessarily 'Council-led'.

¹ The default report field of '% complete' was estimated subjectively where an initiative is 'in progress', and the start and end dates proved challenging to adjust so were mostly left with a default end date of 30 June 2024 (i.e. the end of the current LTP period).

Results

The attached report provides a snapshot of Blueprint implementation progress.

In addition to providing text updates where possible on each initiative, the report has summary tables and pie charts indicating progress across the District, by Local Area, and by Council-led or community-led.

This shows that implementation of nearly half the Blueprint initiatives is either in progress / ongoing (39%), or complete (10%). For Council-led initiatives, the percentage of initiatives underway or complete (55%) is higher than for community-led initiatives (21%), recognising that in most of the community-led initiatives progress status is unknown at present.

Progress appears to vary across the 17 Local Area Blueprints, with some communities having a relatively higher percentage of initiatives underway or complete than others. The Gordonton and Port Waikato Local Area Blueprints have only been in place for one year, compared with four years for the other Local Area Blueprints, which can explain why relatively less progress has been made in those areas.

Interpretation of Results

While the Blueprint process undoubtedly created community expectations, the Blueprint section of the Council's website makes it clear that implementation of all Blueprint initiatives is not guaranteed:

"It's important to note that just because a project or initiative might be in the Blueprint, it doesn't mean it will happen straight away, or even at all. If it does happen, the project may not necessarily be Council funded. Instead this might be a perfect opportunity for a community to drive, with funding from other agencies and Council's support."

From a timing perspective, Council is just now completing Year Two of the three-year timeframe for the first LTP informed by the Blueprint. With 278 Blueprint initiatives, having the majority underway or complete is a positive sign. As stated above, it is likely that community-led initiatives may have made some progress that Council staff are not yet aware of.

The community-led development programme and implementation of the new Blueprint implementation and community aspirations fund is expected to increasingly result not only in progress across a number of initiatives, but increased Council staff awareness of this progress.

The Council's community-led development team continues to engage with their communities to scope and identify groups that can lead Blueprint and aspiration projects, including through the following:

- Capability and capacity building through workshops, mentoring/ coaching to enable groups to progress their community-led aspirations
 - Developing working relationships between different Council teams to enhance outcomes
-

- Building relationships with external agencies, especially funders
- Developing relationships with community boards and committees and helping them to support community aspiration projects

It is expected that these steps will continue to encourage activation of more Blueprint projects over the coming months as communities further understand and embrace community-led development.

6. Next steps Ahu whakamua

Communications and Future Reports

The attached report will be uploaded to the Blueprint section of the Council's website, replacing the previous version from February.

Based on the current schedule of six-monthly updates, a further update will be developed in October / November for reporting to the last Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee meeting of 2023.

Future reports will continue to incorporate updates via Community Boards and Community Committees, to try to reflect progress on community-led initiatives (or even Council-led ones where the community has in fact taken the first steps).

As the community-led development programme continues to roll out across our communities, and implementation of the new funding for Blueprint implementation and community aspirations advances further, it is expected that future reports will show a higher percentage of initiatives that are in progress or completed, especially for community-led initiatives.

Blueprint Review

The current LTP provides funding for a full review of Blueprints every 6 years (including consultant-led public workshops), with a light review conducted in-house for the 3-year point in between. Accordingly, a light review is currently underway of the full 2019 Blueprint², as part of preparation of the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan. This review is being facilitated via an online survey sent to Councillors and relevant Community Board / Committee chairs for each Local Area Blueprint, with responses due by 30 June; the survey is attached as Attachment Two. It asks, in a consistent way across the 17 Local Area Blueprints, which existing Blueprint initiatives the communities would like to see continued, removed, added, or amended.

² Including (to a lesser degree) the new Gordonton and Port Waikato Local Area Blueprints, which were finalised in July 2022

Survey responses will be reported to the next Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee, with any recommended amendments to Blueprints. Decisions can be made at that time as to the extent of graphic design re-work required prior to publication of the revised Blueprints. In any case, the revised priorities will provide a useful input to the 2024-2034 LTP.

7. Attachments

Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 – Blueprint Implementation Progress Report (as of 31 May 2023)

Attachment 2 – Blueprint Review survey form (May / June 2023)



Action and Task Progress Report- Standard

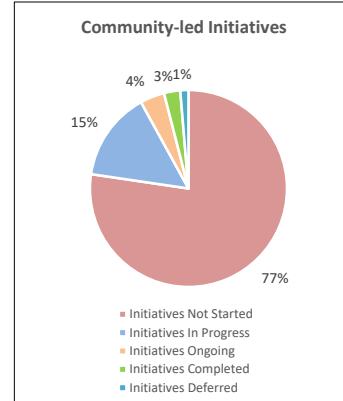
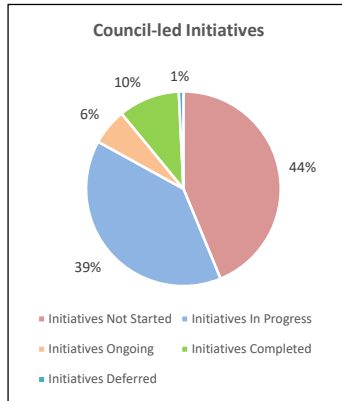
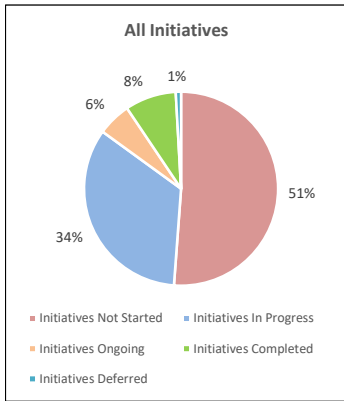
Waikato District Council

cammsstrategy

Print Date: 15-Jun-2023

BREAKDOWN BLUEPRINT PLAN

	All	Council-led	Community-led
Initiatives Not Started	174	116	58
Initiatives In Progress	115	104	11
Initiatives Ongoing	19	16	3
Initiatives Completed	29	27	2
Initiatives Deferred	3	2	1
Total	340	265	75



BREAKDOWN BY AREA

By Area	Not Started	In Progress	Ongoing	Completed	Deferred	Total
Gordonton	24	2	0	0	0	26
Port Waikato	32	1	0	0	0	33
Raglan	10	7	3	1	0	21
Te Kauwhata	8	8	1	0	0	17
Te Kowhai	4	5	0	2	0	11
Tamahere	4	6	2	3	0	15
Taupiri	9	5	0	0	0	14
Tuakau	8	3	2	7	0	20
Whatawhata	7	3	2	7	0	19
District Wide	21	26	6	8	0	61
Horotiu	5	4	1	1	2	13
Huntly	9	5	1	0	0	15
Matangi	2	6	0	1	0	9
Mercer	8	2	0	0	0	10
Meremere	5	8	2	0	0	15
Ngaruawahia	9	8	0	1	0	18
Ohinewai	6	7	0	2	1	16
Pokeno	3	7	1	2	0	13
	174	113	21	35	3	346

2.1 Gordonton

2.1.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.282 GN4.1 Continue to redevelop Hukanui Park with a playground, seating and possible other recreation facilities, while ensuring the history of the heritage buildings in and around the park is celebrated, as well as iwi cultural aspects, considering local reserve status, infrastructure limitations, and Building Code requirements.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	24-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 24-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.283 GN4.2 Facilitate the re-establishment of the markets:

- Facilitate organisational arrangements
- Provide infrastructure to accommodate traffic and parking.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	24-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 24-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.284 GN4.3 Improve the safety and security of commercial areas and within community, considering CCTV, increased surveillance, neighbourhood watch etc.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	24-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 24-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.285 GN4.4 Install public recycle bins by the public toilets.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Phillip Ellis - Solid Waste Team Leader	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.286 GN4.5 Support the churches with expertise and advice on matters regarding earthquake strengthening.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.287 GN4.6 Provide a sports facility, possibly in conjunction with the current facilities in the Domain or elsewhere.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.288 GN4.7 Investigate the need for improvements to the cemetery, consider:

- Parking issues
- Wetland and native trees
- A shared path from the cemetery to Woodlands Road
- Traffic safety.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022</i>				

2.1.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.289 GN6.1 Produce and implement a business attraction strategy to encourage the development of appropriate commercial activities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022</i>				

2.1.3 Governance

Action Title: 9.1.5.290 GN9.1 Recognise or clarify the role of the Gordonton Community Committee and improve communication between the community and the Council.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.291 GN9.2 Assist community-led initiatives where the Council can give support, e.g. building on arts and culture sector to strengthen identity.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022</i>				

2.1.4 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.292 GN5.1 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional residential and commercial land beyond the existing zoning could be located and what this means for infrastructure and the role and design of

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				

Action Title: 9.1.5.293 GN5.2 Investigate with the landowner the possible barriers for the development of the residential zoned land by the school and remove these barriers if within the Council's control.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Will Gauntlett - Growth and Analytics Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments: New project - not yet allocated to a staff member.

Last Updated: 18-Apr-2023

2.1.5 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.294 GN1.1 Produce an identity strategy for Gordonton.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	25-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 25-Aug-2022

2.1.6 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.295 GN8.1 Improve streetlights in the village centre, considering solar power or LED.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.296 GN8.2 Promote the installation of a wastewater system for Gordonton in subregional planning programmes.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.297 GN8.3 Advocate for better internet connectivity.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

2.1.7 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.298 GN3.1 Improve the relationships between WDC and local mana whenua.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	In Progress	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	1%

Action Progress Comments: Our PIH team have been working hard, specifically over the last three years to improve our relationships with Mana whenua. We are trying to improve these relationships by engaging early and inviting
Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.299 GN3.2 Engage and collaborate with iwi regarding cultural interpretation signage within public realm projects.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	In Progress	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	1%

Action Progress Comments: I think we as Council are improving in this space. We have engaged and collaborated with local Mana whenua when undertaking projects for help with designing and producing cultural references. We are
Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.1.8 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.300 GN2.1 Plant more trees in and around the village and establish riparian planting and a nature trail.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.301 GN2.2 Develop the land behind St Mary’s Church as wetland and bring it back into its natural state (while working with the marae).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

2.1.9 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.302 GN7.1 Continue with plans to improve the amenity of Gordonton Road as part of the revocation, including lower speed limit, traffic visibility around Woodlands Road, safer crossings and connections, safety conditions and beautification of entrances to the village (more detail in action description).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.303 GN7.2 Continue with the upgrade of College Drive with footpaths and lighting, and provide a timeframe for these works.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.304 GN7.3 Build a shared path along the Komakorau Stream connecting Taupiri, Woodlands Estate, the village centre to Wairere nurseries and Hukanui Marae.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

105

Action Title: 9.1.5.305 GN7.4 Consider traffic issues around Gordonton School by investigating whether:

- More parking is required
- More space for buses is needed
- The narrow footpath along the one-lane bridge needs widening
- More and safer crossings on Woodlands Road are needed.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.306 GN7.5 Advocate to Waikato Regional Council for public transport services to Gordonton.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.307 GN7.6 Investigate the feasibility of the upgrade of Peach Road and installation of footpaths to increase the safety of pedestrians and cyclists along this narrow road that is increasingly being used.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

2.10 Port Waikato

106

2.10.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.308 PW4.1 Continue the planned construction and/or upgrades of playgrounds at Cobourne Reserve, Maraetai Bay, and Cordyline Road / Phillips Reserve.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.309 PW4.2 Redevelop the wharf area:

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Patrick Edwards - Contractor - Capex Delivery Consultant	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.310 PW4.3 Improve the trailer parking around the existing second boat ramp to encourage its use and relieve the pressure on the boat ramp in the wharf area.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Patrick Edwards - Contractor - Capex Delivery Consultant	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.311 PW4.4 Improve general safety:

- Increase of police presence at events, long weekends, holiday periods
- Reinstatement of neighbourhood street co-ordinators with direct lines of communication.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.312 PW4.5 Facilitate the provision of a library book service in Port Waikato.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Shelby Spain - Customer Delivery Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: This initiative has not been progressed. This will be investigated to see how we can deliver this service to be consistent. Click and collect has been initiated in the last 12 months across all libraries, available <i>Last Updated: 26-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.313 PW4.6 Consider options for the future of the public tennis court and the basketball half-court, considering the establishment of a youth hub with a skate and scooter park, mountain bike tracks, BMX course etc.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.314 PW4.7 Provide a regularly updated list of service providers for our community, aside from the Port Report.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.315 PW4.8 Increase opportunities for recycling, e.g. through a large organic waste bin, a local recycling centre, inorganic collection etc.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Phillip Ellis - Solid Waste Team Leader	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.316 PW4.9 Prepare a concept plan for improvements to Cobourne Reserve, considering:

- Increasing planting
- Adding lighting at carpark
- Providing wheelchair access.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.317 PW4.10 Establish a community garden.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

2.10.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.318 PW6.1 Increase local services zoned land to provide opportunities for commercial activities and local employment, e.g. shops, retail, restaurants.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.319 PW6.2 Promote existing and attract more hospitality services and businesses.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

2.10.3 Governance

Action Title: 9.1.5.320 PW9.1 Improve support to community-led initiatives and communication between Council and the community, and invite community-led initiatives where the Council can give support; possible ideas:

- Build on Arts and Culture to strengthen Identity, e.g. through events
- Activities by 'Friends of Cobourne Reserve'.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: April 2023:				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.321 PW9.2 Strengthen the relationship and communication between the Port Waikato Residents and Ratepayers Association and the Community Board.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: April 2023:				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023</i>				

2.10.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.322 PW1.1 Undertake a public realm upgrade at the wharf area to make a gateway statement and address the lack of gathering space, considering:

- Seating
- Public art (both contemporary and reflective of the area's significance for mana whenua)
- A boardwalk connection with Cobourne Reserve
- Wayfinding and orientation signage
- Signage showing the Wharf, Cobourne Reserve, possibly other areas, with information on the history.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.323 PW1.2 Produce an identity strategy for Port Waikato.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

2.10.5 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.324 PW8.1 Continue the public toilet upgrade and relocation at Sunset Beach.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.325 PW8.2 Improve stormwater management and especially address drainage issues along Maunsell Road and Centreway Road.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.326 PW8.3 Improve street lighting, considering solar power or LED.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.327 PW8.4 Upgrade public toilets and their wastewater disposal at Maraetai Bay.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.328 PW8.5 Investigate the installation of commercial wastewater treatment and water supply for inclusion in the Asset Management Plan to encourage growth and commercial development, especially in the Wharf and Sunset Beach areas.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

2.10.6 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.329 PW3.1 Erect signage to mark and explain the history and cultural significance for mana whenua of the following:

- The wetland
- The marae and the ownership of the land gifted to the mission
- The whale graveyard
- The Pa site on the hill, which also needs to be connected with a walkway
- Events related to Te Tiriti.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning

Not Started

26-Aug-2022

30-Jun-2023

0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.330 PW3.2 Resolve access issues across the recreation reserve in Ashwell Drive.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.331 PW3.3 Improve the relationships between WDC, the local community committee, and local mana whenua.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022***2.10.7 Nature**

Action Title: 9.1.5.332 PW2.1 Continue the erosion / resilience planning project, including regular clean-ups of debris, and provide ongoing clarity on what is being done.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jim Ebenhoh - Planning and Policy Manager	In Progress	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	25%

Action Progress Comments: After completion of necessary technical reports, recent focus has been on short-term options to slow coastal erosion, such as sand push-ups. A scoping exercise is being done at present that is likely to*Last Updated: 25-May-2023*

Action Title: 9.1.5.333 PW2.2 Improve litter control in the summer peak months, e.g. by increasing the frequency of servicing the public rubbish bins, providing separated bins, no-litter signs, no-freedom camping signs, and clean-up of public areas.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Phillip Ellis - Solid Waste Team Leader	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.334 PW2.3 Advocate for ecological improvements in the wetland area.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.335 PW2.4 Along with Waikato Regional Council and Department of Conservation, support the community's restoration and weed control initiatives in the sand dune areas.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

2.10.8 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.336 PW7.1 Continue to maintain the entry road into Port Waikato in light of erosion and subsidence.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.337 PW7.2 Improve road safety in response to speeding and antisocial behaviour on roads, the beach and in the dunes, e.g. through more speed limit signs, cameras, police presence, speed bumps, especially along Maunsell Road and at Maraetai Bay Reserve.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.338 PW7.3 Improve the pedestrian safety and traffic management at the Sunset Beach carpark, especially considering parking manoeuvring.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.339 PW7.4 Advocate to Waikato Regional Council for shuttle services to key facilities and / or higher frequency public transport services to Port Waikato e.g. on the weekends and on Thursdays.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.340 PW7.5 Develop more recreational walkways and connect cycling destinations through tracks and cycle lanes.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	26-Aug-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 26-Aug-2022</i>				

2.11 Raglan

2.11.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.134 RA4.1 Extend free wi-fi around the library.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Shelby Spain - Customer Delivery Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: We haven't had any request to extend.
Last Updated: 26-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.135 RA4.2 Support the Whaingaroa Raglan Affordability Project.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 14-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.136 RA4.3 Support entities undertaking youth social initiatives.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started
Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.137 RA4.4 Support the development of a community hub for locals, youth skills, cultural, health and wellbeing and environmental exchange (OMG Tech). Consider the Wi Neera Street old surgery' building (1) as an option.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 14-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.138 RA4.5 Investigate the development of a recreation centre [and pool] and bringing sports together.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Budget allocated to refurbish Raglan Rugby Club Rooms next FY. Local developer has also indicated that they may develop a community pool which will be held in private ownership.
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.11.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.139 RA6.1 Support initiatives by the tech and visitor sectors to address youth unemployment.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Action Title: 9.1.5.140 RA6.2 Promote the formation of a business hub for high tech promotion and exchange.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 15-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.141 RA6.3 Consider how to support the community in creating additional and sustaining existing local jobs in tourism. Consider a bed tax to compensate for increased waste and to support housing affordability initiatives.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	5%

Action Progress Comments: Project - Reigniting Tourism in Raglan – Creating a new look tourism sector that is self-sustaining and thriving, that promotes our unique identity while celebrating our people, our stories and our place.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.142 RA6.4 Investigate opportunities for short-stay courses.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 15-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.143 RA6.5 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.144 RA6.6 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.11.3 Governance

Action Title: 9.1.5.148 RA9.1 Investigate whether Harbour Board income is used locally (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Nick Johnston - Advocacy and Investment Advisor	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	100%

Action Progress Comments:

Action Title: 9.1.5.149 RA9.2 Partner with Raglan Naturally in respect to planning processes.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	-0%

Action Progress Comments: There are currently no planning processes specifically related to Raglan, but when the time arises, Raglan Naturally will be included.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

2.11.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.130 RA1.1 Build on the strong identity of Raglan based on the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.2 to 1.4). Consider nature, regeneration, environmental initiatives, the arts, and surfing.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	5%

Action Progress Comments: Project - Reigniting Tourism in Raglan – Creating a new look tourism sector that is self-sustaining and thriving, that promotes our unique identity while celebrating our people, our stories and our place.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

2.11.5 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.133 RA3.1 Support a strong Maaori culture, including education on the Treaty of Waitangi, respecting tangata whenua, and creating Te Reo signage (refer to DW3.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.11.6 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.131 RA2.1 Support Raglan Naturally in their prioritised local initiatives such as local food production, energy self sufficiency, alternatives to weed spraying, GE free approaches and education regarding climate change.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Rachael Goddard - Climate Action and Sustainability Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Ongoing support offered to Raglan Naturally in community-led development. The Climate Action & Sustainability Manager sits on the board of Raglan Naturally in a personal capacity. Raglan Naturally and

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.132 RA2.2 Support community in Zero Waste initiatives, spread learning across the district.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Rachael Goddard - Climate Action and Sustainability Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: The Climate Action & Sustainability Manager is providing support and input via the WDC Waste Minimisation Steering Group. Support has also been offered externally to Xtreme Zero Waste via the Climate

Last Updated: 24-May-2023

2.11.7 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.145 RA7.1 Extend walking and cycling network, including to Whale Bay.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2022	30%
Action Progress Comments: UNDERWAY - WALE BAY IS UNLIKELY TO PROCEED DUE TO HAPU LAND CLAIM				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.146 RA7.2 Improve traffic safety around the school.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	In Progress	01-Jan-2022	30-Aug-2024	30%
Action Progress Comments: speed limits changed as part of speed bylaw 2021 - school zones created				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.147 RA7.3 Develop a parking strategy.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2023	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 15-Dec-2021</i>				

2.11.8 Other

Action Title: 9.1.5.150 RA10.1 Raglan Naturally suggestions for LTP beyond Blueprint.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Nicole Hubbard - Corporate Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	0%
Action Progress Comments: No action has been taken as yet. This will form part of the LTP 2024 project considerations. The project is anticipated to commence 1 July 2022 however projects will not be consider until 2023.				
<i>Last Updated: 06-May-2022</i>				

2.12 Te Kauwhata

2.12.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.153 TK4.1 Work with the Ministry of Education to agree an integrated approach to delivering additional educational capacity, especially where associated with new residential areas (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 17-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.154 TK4.2 Promote the provision of health services.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments: Community house alongside the health centre lead this.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.155 TK4.3 Consider the provision of facilities to accommodate community, and active and passive recreational activities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	20%

Action Progress Comments: Community committee has assigned funding support person to assist with funding for 4 projects at the Te Kauwhata Domain. Currently scoping progress with project leaders. Connecting to Open space s

Last Updated: 22-Aug-2022

2.12.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.158 TK6.1 Consider rezoning the site of the existing primary school as commercial to allow for a central business hub (in conjunction with the initiative to identify additional educational facilities elsewhere, see TK4.1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Waikato 2070 identifies this site as an area for possible future expansion for the town centre. No change in the land use is able to take place until such time that the site is no longer designated for schooling

Last Updated: 22-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.159 TK6.2 Determine key town centre strategy and management needs.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	0%

Action Progress Comments: Town Centre Plans have been prioritised for Pokeno, Huntly and Ngaruawahia. Priority could be considered as part of the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.160 TK6.3 Strengthen and emphasise linkages to the Waikato River and the Te Araroa Trail, and leverage for tourism.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Rebecca Law - Reserves Planner	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: No progress has been made on this. The ramparts and trenches that formed the core of the Rangiriri Pa's defences are ready, and the reconstructed North Waikato pa formally re-opened on 23 April 2022				
<i>Last Updated: 17-May-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.161 TK6.4 Provide a covered facility to accommodate the markets.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not currently planned or budgeted for. Potential opportunity to identify the need with local developers and could be incorporated into future plans.				
<i>Last Updated: 12-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.162 TK6.5 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%
Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.163 TK6.6 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%
Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

2.12.3 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.156 TK5.1 Consider measures to ensure high quality new residential environments.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Sandra Kelly - Programme Manager District Plan	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	5%
Action Progress Comments: No action as appeals work and Variation 3 are the main priority for the team at present.				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.157 TK5.2 Provide design guidance to ensure housing diversity for different family sizes.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Sandra Kelly - Programme Manager District Plan	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	5%
Action Progress Comments: No progress as appeals and variation 3 are the priority for the team.				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

2.12.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.151 TK1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Te Kauwhata, consider viticultural history, Lake Waikare, and the Whangamarino wetlands. Develop a heritage trail highlighting the viticultural history of Te Kauwhata.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.152 TK1.2 Promote Rangiriri, highlighting the area's history.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023</i>				

2.12.5 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.164 TK7.1 Produce a cycling and walking strategy to develop local connections and paths, including around the lakes and the Whangamarino Wetland.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	25%
Action Progress Comments: The WDC trails strategy is under review and will be consulted on, as the Connectivity Strategy to include all connections - trails, footpaths, cycle trails, bridle trails etc. Content review and drafting of new				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.165 TK7.2 Consider alternatives to the bypass that achieves the aims of reducing trucks through the village (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Jun-2023	5%
Action Progress Comments: planning underway				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.166 TK7.3 Consider facilitating a grade-separated rail crossing, at existing or possible bypass location (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: not planned in the LTP				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

2.12.6 Other

Action Title: 9.1.5.167 TK8.1 New initiative: Main street / town centre pedestrian and traffic safety measures.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	02-Oct-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: TO BE CONSIDERED IN THE NEXT LTP				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

2.13 Te Kowhai

2.13.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.169 TE4.1 Facilitate school expansion by shared use of the sportsfields or moving the fields to a new site (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Megan May - Acting General Manager - Service Delivery	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: School have a walkway to the village green fields and have use of it at all times.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.170 TE4.2 Create a village green by expanding sports fields and include changing rooms and public toilets (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	15%

Action Progress Comments: Negotiations are currently underway to purchase land within the Te Kowhai area. If successful, this purchase will cover future of growth in this area until 2040.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.13.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.171 TE6.1 Support the expansion or intensification of the airpark with commercial uses associated with aeronautical activities (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Sandra Kelly - Programme Manager District Plan	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The Proposed District Plan Decision allows for the expansion and aeronautical development in Te Kowhai.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.172 TE6.2 Consider expanding commercial zone towards garage (4).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.173 TE6.3 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.174 TE6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%
Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

2.13.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.168 TE1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Te Kowhai, consider the airpark.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 26-May-2022</i>				

2.13.4 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.175 TE7.1 Support the development of a new inner relief road, connecting Horotiu Road and Te Kowhai Road (5).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: will be developed as part of structure planning and developer growth cells- next ltp				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.176 TE7.2 Support the expansion of the footpath network in new residential developments and connecting to the village centre.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: to be developed as part of the next LTP, programme for this year is full				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.177 TE7.3 Support the completion of the Te Otamanui walkway by the community.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	25%
Action Progress Comments: \$20,000 allocated per annum through the LTP to support the Te Kowhai Community Group in completing the Te Otamanui Walkway				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.178 TE7.4 Provide longer distance walking and cycling connections from the Te Otamanui walkway along the Waipa River to Ngaruawahia (also refer to DW1.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: to be developed as part of the next LTP, programme for this ltp is full				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

2.14 Tamahere

2.14.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.181 TM4.1 Support the Zero Waste initiative at the Hub as a start of possible wider local initiative.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Phillip Ellis - Solid Waste Team Leader	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	20%

Action Progress Comments: Project on hold due to unplanned key staff member exit. Replacement starts mid June and will pick this up again
Last Updated: 25-May-2022

2.14.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.183 TM6.1 Support activation of the Hub development (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Need regular events.
Last Updated: 08-Dec-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.184 TM6.2 Support local employment initiatives. Consider the quarry (needs commercial rights), elderly housing, leveraging off cycle route, retail in the new commercial hub, Southern Fresh Foods, home-based employment etc.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 21-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.185 TM6.3 Facilitate a plan to rotate the location of the local markets between the current location at the church and the reserve in Matangi in order to increase frequency (4).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Cr Beavis comment: unrealistic as not how markets operate.
Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.186 TM6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	5%

Action Progress Comments: Consideration for employment land (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones) beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan Decisions is work that needs to be undertaken. This work
Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.187 TM6.5 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	5%

Action Progress Comments: Consideration for employment land (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones) beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan Decisions is work that needs to be undertaken. This work will be informed by a demand and supply assessment at a sub-regional partnership level.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

2.14.3 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.182 TM5.1 Investigate whether the land bounded by SH21, Tamahere Drive and the proposed southern links route should be rezoned from rural to Village (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Council have taken a strong position on providing for no more Rural Residential or Large Lot Residential development in the District.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

2.14.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.179 TM1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Tamahere, consider the gully network, Wiremu Tamihana (celebrating heritage), and the markets.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Cr Beavis: someone looking at Tamahere heritage sign for piazza and church (with funding available) but keen on proposed heritage sign for the Narrows.

Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

2.14.5 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.180 TM2.1 Support Mangaone Stream revegetation efforts and the construction of a walking and cycleway along this stream (1) (also refer to TM7.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	40%

Action Progress Comments: Update from Committee: The MOU is under review. No volunteer work is currently occurring.

Last Updated: 08-Dec-2022

2.14.6 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.188 TM7.1 Advocate with NZTA to provide a pedestrian and cycle bridge across SH21(5).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ross Bayer - Roading Team Leader	Completed	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2023	100%

Action Progress Comments: North-South connectivity achieved with completion by NZTA of underpass in conjunction with Te Awa Cyclepath.

Last Updated: 08-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.189 TM7.1a Access across SH21 at roundabout.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2023	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Achieved though not at roundabout.

Last Updated: 08-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.190 TM7.1b Pedestrian and cyclist access across Expressway on and off ramps at Airport interchange.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2023	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Still to achieve any implementation of solution, but NZTA has now completed technical report with triggers for other than at-grade solutions.
Last Updated: 08-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.191 TM7.2 Work with public transport provider to ensure the Hamilton / Cambridge bus will loop past the new retirement village (6) and commercial hub.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	31-Dec-2024	40%

Action Progress Comments: Progress with the accessibility subsidised arrangement now in place and soon to commence WRC funded trial of extension to Hillcrest bus service being extended to Tamahere on partial basis. Also inclusion of PT for Tamahere in the new Regional Transport plan.
Last Updated: 08-Aug-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.192 TM7.3 Support the community with the extension of shared paths (walking / cycling) through natural areas.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	40%

Action Progress Comments: MOU not complete.
Last Updated: 08-Dec-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.193 TM8.1 Investigation of service centre, funded through LTP.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Megan May - Acting General Manager - Service Delivery	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Tamahere Service Center is now open and operating.
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.15 Taupiri

2.15.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.195 TP4.1 Redevelop the Bob Byrne Memorial Park. Consider extending it along road reserve and creating visitor activity and a local social node through the construction of a jetty (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: This initiative has not been progressed. If required, will need to be planned for in next LTP
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.196 TP4.2 Facilitate boating / water recreation opportunities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Clarification required on whether community wants more boat ramps; there is already a large one under Taupiri Mountain.
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.197 TP4.3 Support the creation of youth activities that are cultural and community based.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 21-Dec-2021

2.15.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.199 TP6.1 Support when appropriate the upgrade of the local dairy to a supermarket, as the population grows.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: No progress has been made on this yet.
Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.200 TP6.2 Develop a town centre plan to address fragmentation and services required to support employment and residential growth (2). Also consider the impact of a new service centre at the interchange and the new entrance into Taupiri from the Expressway (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
 The Ngaruawahia, Hopuhopu and Taupiri Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Taupiri community.
Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.201 TP6.3 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

The Ngaruawahia, Hopuhopu and Taupiri Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Taupiri community.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.202 TP6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

The Ngaruawahia, Hopuhopu and Taupiri Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Taupiri community.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.15.3 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.198 TP5.1 Investigate the opportunity for industrial land (refer to District-wide proposals).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

The Ngaruawahia, Hopuhopu and Taupiri Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Taupiri community.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.15.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.194 TP1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Taupiri, consider Taupiri maunga, the 'village feel', and the historical sawmill and flaxmill.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Formation of community Trust to oversee and obtain funding for community led projects.

Last Updated: 31-May-2022

2.15.5 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.207 TP8.1 Public toilets required at reserve.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: District public toilet strategy being developed. A toilet is provided at Bob Bryne Reserve, the Taupiri Domain has toilets in the netball clubrooms, but are shut when netball is not being played due to vandalism issues.

2.15.6 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.203 TP7.1 Ensure connectivity through the proposed Lovell development to the existing street network and the proposed service centre (4).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	10%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

The Ngaruawahia, Hophopu and Taupiri Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Taupiri community and how these areas will connect to one another through roads, walking and cycling.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.204 TP7.2 Investigate the possibility of constructing a bridge across the Waikato River to connect east and west.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: No progress has been done to date on this. The cost to pursue a piece of infrastructure of this scale is very high. There would need to be a business case that demonstrates the benefits of connecting the East and West of the Waikato River. In Taupiri a trust has been set up to pursue a walkway network which is supported by the community.

Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.205 TP7.3 Allow for the continuation of the Te Awa cycle trail (refer to District-wide proposals).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 21-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.206 TP7.4 Consider cycling and walking to and from the school as the town expands.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

Action Progress Comments: to be developed as part of the next LTP, programme for this ltp is full

Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022

2.16 Tuakau

2.16.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.2 TU4.1 Support the local initiative to establish a community hub, which may be partially privately funded.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: OTCB applied for building consent to expand the existing youth center. This consent was paid for by WDC but no progress was made on behalf of the community. WDC staff will continue to support this initiative.

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.3 TU4.3 Develop a sports and recreation facility, including consideration of incorporation of the Council's pool facility.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	10%

Action Progress Comments: Work has been completed through Sport Waikato to support the Dr John Lightbody Sports Society to utilise the existing sports pavillion building. Additional renewal work is due to occur at the Tuakau Pools to improve that asset.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.4 TU4.4 Support and enhance library services.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Brian Cathro - Customer Support Projects Manager (secondment)	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Complete. Refurb and extension of Tuakau library was completed in 2021.

Last Updated: 31-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.9 TU4.2 Support the community aspirations for an emergency services hub.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Lease has been provided for Lightbody Reserve building to use as community/emergency hub.

Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.20 TU4.5 Install lighting and CCTV for safety.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Megan May - Acting General Manager - Service Delivery	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: CCTV cameras are already installed in Tuakau and a recent upgrade to the server has future proofed this.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.16.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.6 TU6.7 Prepare a strategy for the promotion of Tuakau for living and visiting.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 18-Nov-2021</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.12 TU6.1 Prepare a town centre strategy considering character, provision of green spaces, streetscape upgrades, mix of uses, anchors etc. (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2023	30-Jun-2025	0%
Action Progress Comments: Other town centres (Pokeno & Ngaruawahia) have taken priority to date. Council will determine the priority list of where to next for Town Centre Planning as part of the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.				
<i>Last Updated: 01-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.13 TU6.6 Ensure that the timing of job creation aligns with residential growth.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Emma Rankin - Economic Development and Key Account Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%
Action Progress Comments: The zoning for employment in Tuakau has been in place for many years. The Proposed District Plan Decision has allowed for additional residential zoning. Council cannot determine the timing of jobs to the market. Staff could assist business owners but this is community led.				
<i>Last Updated: 16-May-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.14 TU6.8 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%
Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).				
<i>Last Updated: 01-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.15 TU6.9 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%
Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).				
<i>Last Updated: 01-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.16 TU6.2 Consider employment uses south of town centre along River Road (see strategic diagram) (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	100%

Action Progress Comments: This area was considered for additional development as part of the Structure Plan, the Proposed Waikato District Plan and Waikato 2070 (Councils Growth and Economic Development Strategy). Other areas for development were identified in fitting with creating compact urban environments. Since these plans were developed the National Policy Statement on Highly Productive Land has been released. This is to protect Highly Productive Land for primary productivity from development and would apply to this area.

129

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.17 TU6.3 Establish a Designers and Makers Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.18 TU6.4 Establish a Designer Food Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.19 TU6.5 Investigate opportunities for short-stay courses.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 18-Nov-2021

2.16.3 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.10 TU5.1 Consider areas for expansion, reconciling possible growth demand with high class soils and contours.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The Decision on the Proposed District Plan identifies areas for future residential expansion while considering contours and high class soils. This saw some zoning in the west reconciled back to rural.

Last Updated: 16-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.11 TU5.2 Address the interface between residential and industrial land. Consider sports fields as a buffer (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Careful consideration by the hearings panel was given to the location of Residential sites in relation to Industrial sites. Stronger Policies have been put in place to help mitigate effects of industry near sensitive land uses.

Last Updated: 16-May-2022

2.16.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.1 TU1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area,

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not started				
<i>Last Updated: 10-May-2022</i>				

2.16.5 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.5 TU8.1 Build public toilets.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Megan May - Acting General Manager - Service Delivery	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%
Action Progress Comments: The new toilets at St Stephens Ave have now been completed and are open. Based on community feedback in July 2022, more toilets are desired but no specific details of where are provided.				
<i>Last Updated: 26-May-2022</i>				

2.16.6 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.7 TU7.1 Provide advocacy for the widening of existing, and / or the construction of new, road connections to SH1.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	-0%
Action Progress Comments: this project is not included in this LTP				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.8 TU7.2 Create a Park and Ride for public transport (for consideration 2024-2034 LTP)

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: The Pookeno-Tuakau-Pukekohe bus service was launched in January 2021. It has provided a reliable and safe public transport option connecting these towns (and importantly, connecting Pokeno and Tuakau to the Pukekohe station park and ride within the Auckland boundary). However the Pukekohe Railway Station has been closed from 13 August 2022 as KiwiRail is redeveloping the station and the rail line to allow for Auckland Transport's electric trains to travel between Pukekohe and Papakura. The Pukekohe train service has been suspended until late 2024. Bus route 394 is a free replacement bus between Papakura and Pukekohe via Paerata Rise. Customers can transfer at Papakura Station for travel on the Southern Line to other destinations.				
The short and long term benefits of where the next railway station in the Waikato district should be located is being considered through the Upper Northern Waikato Railway Station Indicative Business Case (due for completion by end June 2023). There is no funding to progress a park and ride facility as part of any station (let alone the construction of a platform for any either Tuakau, Pookeno or Te Kauwhata in the current LTP). Council does however own land adjacent where the potential railway platform should be in Pookeno and Te Kauwhata so this is an advantage. Consideration for land acquisition to future proof a potential station and/or park and ride facility at Tuakau will need to happen through the 2024 LTP together with consideration of a future station in the northern Waikato (whether it be Te Kauwhata, Pokeno or Tuakau). The indicative business case will inform where this station should be.				
<i>Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023</i>				

2.17 Whatawhata

2.17.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.210 WW4.1 Support the process to create a meeting space ('Our Place').

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	30%

Action Progress Comments: Blueprint funding allocated to this project. Wellbeing Trust funding and Rural Ward Funding allocated also.
Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.211 WW4.2 Facilitate an investigation into the options for expanding the School. Consider expansion towards the east (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: This needs to be led by the Ministry of Education.
Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.212 WW4.3 Create public picnic areas with BBQ facilities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: There is insufficient Council land in Whatawhata except for the Whatawhata Recreation Reserve as majority of land bounds highways, and exiting and entering is a safety concern.
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.17.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.213 WW6.1 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	5%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.214 WW6.2 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	5%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
Last Updated: 31-May-2023

2.17.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.208 WW1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Whatawhata, consider the village as a service centre for the rural periphery and local marae.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 21-Dec-2021</i>				

2.17.4 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.219 WW8.1 Consider constructing new facilities as part of the proposed sports fields expansion (WW4.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	10%
Action Progress Comments: Unfortunately, the Whatawhata Rugby club burnt down and have left the Whatawhata Domain with no facility. Community Connections team and Sport Waikato are working with the Whatawhata Rugby Committee to support the rebuild of their club building and ensure what ever is built suits the needs of the community. <i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

2.17.5 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.209 WW2.1 Address river bank weeds and erosion issues.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Ongoing liaison with WRC and roading alliance on issues as resources allow. <i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

2.17.6 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.215 WW7.1 Support NZTA discussions to deliver the roundabout to resolve congestion and safety concerns (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Gareth Bellamy - Senior Transportation Engineer	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%
Action Progress Comments: this is an nzta project and not responsibility of council. design is underway by waka kotahi, no dates for construction <i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.216 WW7.2 Extend local footpaths to connect new residential areas to the village centre.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: outside this LTP as programme is full <i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.217 WW7.3 Investigate reinstating the Makarini Road bridge across the Waipa to improve connectivity between the village centre and residential expansion areas to the west.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: this project is unlikely to go ahead as there is already crossing facilities, will consider if west side of the waipa river intensifies as its not in the PDP <i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.218 WW7.4 Create public river access to the west of the village centre.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Budget was allocated through last LTP to install a boat ramp. Community decision was made to reallocate funding to playground and then reallocated to the Community Facility build.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.18 District Wide

2.18.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.237 DW4.1 Continue the implementation of the strategy for the upgrade of sporting facilities and reserves.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Staff continue to consider land acquisition opportunities for areas of the district which are under provisioned in sports fields.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.238 DW4.10 Determine a strategy for the clean-up of building frontages and streetscape in town centres and other key areas.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 14-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.239 DW4.11 Improve accessibility of the Council's website and social media.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Emma Edgar - Executive Manager - Communications & Engagement	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	42%

Action Progress Comments: We are in the process of refreshing our social media strategy to ensure that it is up to date and most fit for purpose taking into consideration new approaches and platforms to reach our communities. We will be implementing this soon but in the interim have started increasing our reach through existing channels with enhanced content and campaigns/ messaging that resonate. We will soon be looking at our website refresh and how to ensure that we are leveraging this platform to best effect.

Last Updated: 31-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.240 DW4.12 Determine a strategy for facilitating local communities in their communications (website / social media).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Emma Edgar - Executive Manager - Communications & Engagement	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Feel this is a duplication of this first objective - can it be removed or this one be kept and the other removed? Progress update on this above.

Last Updated: 15-Jul-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.241 DW4.13 Support events organised by local communities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Events team has been created within Council. The team is currently working on community-led events to ensure compliance with strategies, health & safety, traffic management. Plans in place to create an

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.242 DW4.2 Complete a strategy for the upgrade of arts facilities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Action Title: 9.1.5.243 DW4.3 Resolve access needs to Hamilton libraries.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Brian Cathro - Customer Support Projects Manager (secondment)	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Complete. We signed a new contract in 2019 for residents that boarder HCC boundaries.

Last Updated: 31-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.244 DW4.4 Address lack in medical services and isolation issues.Address lack in medical services and isolation issues.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 14-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.245 DW4.5 Implement the public toilet strategy.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Implementing as per works programme. Strategy to be reviewed to consider the expectation of customers and communities while considering budget restraints.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.246 DW4.6 Implement the youth strategy.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.247 DW4.7 Determine a strategy for addressing the lack in aged care facilities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 14-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.248 DW4.8 Undertake a social audit to determine which services are being funded and by whom, which gaps exist, and whether there is any duplication.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 14-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.249 DW4.9 Support safer communities initiatives.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 14-Jan-2022

2.18.10 Other

Action Title: 9.1.5.281 DW10.1 Civic pride via higher levels of service to less well-served areas of town, and targeting spots around town that bring the feel of the place down for clean up.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Trisha Morrison - Community Assets Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	25%

Action Progress Comments: 12/5/23 - Levels of Service are being considered as part of Asset Management Planning and Activity Management Planning for the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan
Last Updated: 12-May-2023

2.18.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.254 DW6.1 Determine additional industrial, commercial and retail land needs.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.255 DW6.2 Determine if, how much, and where possible future employment (land for office development) zoning opportunities beyond the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.256 DW6.3 Determine if, how much, and where possible future retail zoning opportunities beyond the Proposed District Plan lie.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.257 DW6.4 Investigate the industrial land opportunities as identified in the Blueprint project.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.258 DW6.5 Investigate the clean production land opportunities as identified in the Blueprint project.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 17-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.259 DW6.6 Determine a youth into employment strategy, possibly in conjunction with existing entities in this space.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 17-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.260 DW6.7 Develop a visitor attraction strategy preferably focussed on 1.5-hour attractions.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 17-Jan-2022

2.18.3 Governance

Action Title: 9.1.5.277 DW9.1 Support non-Council external entities in their endeavours where their objectives align with the Council's objectives.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Nick Johnston - Advocacy and Investment Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 17-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.278 DW9.2 Determine ways of better utilising Geographic Information System (GIS) services.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Anton Marais - Business Intelligence Team Leader	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: No actions initiated, no planning for how Blue Print mapping and visualization of Blue prints has been investigated

Last Updated: 08-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.279 DW9.3 Give the Blueprint status.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jim Ebenhoh - Planning and Policy Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The Blueprint has informed the 2021 LTP and continues to be a touchstone for planning, operations, service delivery, etc. This quarterly reporting exercise is another example of the Blueprint being given status.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.280 DW9.4 Enable the devolution of the management of limited projects to local committees, justified by a business case. First undertake a 'local provision' scoping study.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jim Ebenhoh - Planning and Policy Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: This is a complicated initiative involving (potentially) co-design as well as empowering communities to deliver projects - but with health and safety considerations etc. The Economic and Community Led Development team's recent work with communities on their Blueprint and other priorities is an example of this being work in progress. Progress updates on other Blueprint initiatives demonstrate what has been achieved.

Last Updated: 25-May-2023

2.18.4 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.250 DW5.1 Review the District Development (Growth) Strategy based on revised population and household projections.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The District Development Strategy was reviewed in 2019 and adopted by Council 2020. The review saw the Economic Development Strategy and Development Strategy combined. The Waikato District

Last Updated: 31-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.251 DW5.2 Assess the plan enabled and commercially feasible residential, business and industrial capacity against the new projections, followed by an exercise to determine future residential, business and industrial zoning opportunities beyond the PDP.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.252 DW5.3 Undertake preparatory work in advance of an affordable housing strategy.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	20%

Action Progress Comments: Council workshops have been held regarding affordability and data is being monitored.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.253 DW5.4 Implement design guidance.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keri Davis-Miller - Resource Management Policy Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	0%
Action Progress Comments: The Proposed District Plan Decision removed to urban design guidance. Work needs to be completed to understand next steps with regards to urban design guidance.				
<i>Last Updated: 17-May-2022</i>				

2.18.5 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.220 DW1.1 Build a strong river corridor identity.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 10-Jan-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.221 DW1.2 Build the identity of each town under the umbrella of the entire District.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 13-Jan-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.222 DW1.3 Promote cultural tourism in the river corridor.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 13-Jan-2022</i>				

2.18.6 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.266 DW8.1 Progress the contract arrangement with Watercare for the delivery of water operations within the district.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Carole Nutt - Waters Contract Relationship Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	100%
Action Progress Comments: Developed delineation table and graphics as part of the Stormwater Collaboration Workshops to demarcate ownership and maintenance responsibility of assets between WDC (Roading, Open Spaces), WSL, WRC and other entities. Delineation Graphics are also available on website for public use and information. Rural drainage asset base with WRC for stormwater.				
<i>Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.267 DW8.10 Central Waikato

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2026	2%

Action Progress Comments: Nga WWTP non-compliant with discharge consent during 2020-21 period, current operations include; desludging of the pond, O&M plan to be submitted May 2022. Planning underway to address current non-compliances by July 2023 date. Nga WWTP upgrade is an option in the Northern Metro WW DBC. Considering bringing Huntly upgrades forward in light of development in Ohenewai. This is being undertaken as part of BAU.

140

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.268 DW8.11 Southern Waikato and Small Schemes

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	99%

Action Progress Comments: The existing Horotiu zoning is serviced or will be serviced for water and wastewater in the 2021-2031 LTP. Consideration of new zoning, and consideration of servicing Te Kowhai will be considered in the preparation of the next LTP.

The exploration of cross boundary solutions has been considered through the Northern Hamilton-Waikato Metropolitan Wastewater Detailed Business Case. The DBC has been adopted and has recommended a long term servicing solution which entails taking wastewater from Ngaaruwaahia, Taupiri, Hopuhopu, Te Kowhai and Horotiu to a future-upgraded Pukete Wastewater Treatment Plant post 2041. Any future planning for this work will need to be undertaken by the new water entity.

Last Updated: 24-Apr-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.269 DW8.2 North Waikato

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	10%

Action Progress Comments: This is being undertaken as part of BAU and shortfall needs to be addressed before physical works can commence.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.270 DW8.3 Raglan - Raglan wastewater upgrade.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2026	10%

Action Progress Comments: This is being undertaken as part of BAU, refer to the Waters Governance Report meeting for updates and the upgrade is being considered as part of the consent renewal.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.271 DW8.4 Mid Waikato - Te Kauwhata wastewater treatment plant (WWTP) (short and long term).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	01-Jan-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: A capital solution for the Te Kauwhata WWTP is currently in design to address the abatement notice and significant works are underway. This is being undertaken as part of BAU and reported in the open section of the Waters Governance Board meeting.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.272 DW8.5 Central Waikato

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Sep-2024	70%

Action Progress Comments: Refer to Waters Governance Board (open section of the meeting) for detail.

Action Title: 9.1.5.273 DW8.6 North Waikato - Pokeno and Tuakau water main upgrades.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2025	25%

Action Progress Comments: This project is underway, this year's stage is Dominion Road, Tuakau, which is nearing completion (approximately mid-May).

Last Updated: 28-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.274 DW8.7 Mid Waikato - Te Kauwhata water-take consent renewal.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	01-Dec-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: Continuing to work with the TKWA to ensure the allocation requested will meet Council's growth aspirations and ensure timely application for the renewal of the water take resource consent by TKWA. This is being undertaken as part of BAU and being reported at the regular Waters Governance Board meetings.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.275 DW8.8 Southern Waikato and Small Schemes

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	15%

Action Progress Comments: Currently considering options for Te Akau Water Supply. Te Akau Options Assessment report was taken to the WGB in March to present the preferred future water supply option to enable a final solution to be authorised. Onewhero and Port Waikato high level options will be presented to Waters Governance Board early June. Struggling to secure land for Southern Schemes water supply scheme.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.276 DW8.9 Raglan - Raglan WWTP Renewal.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	60%

Action Progress Comments: Considering options for land-based discharge solutions that will meet the needs of Tangata whenua and the majority of the Whaingaroa Community. Private land investigations are occurring along with the possible use of Wainui reserve. Being reported at the regular community update meetings and Waters Governance Board meeting.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

2.18.7 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.233 DW3.1 Use the Joint Management Agreements (JMA) more effectively.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	100%

Action Progress Comments: A Strategic Work Programme for 2022-2023 for the Waikato-Tainui | Waikato District Council JMA Committee was developed collaboratively and approved by JMAC on 10 August 2022. A progress update on the implementation of the 2022-2023 Strategic Work Programme was provided at the first JMAC hui of this new triennial on 14 April 2023. It was agreed at the hui that staff must develop a similar Strategic Work Programme for the 2023-2024 financial year and that some of the initiatives/projects identified in the 2022-2023 programme will logically carry over. The Strategic Work Programme is providing a more effective tool for both the tribe and Council to implement and engage on matters of mutual strategic significance.

Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.234 DW3.2 Formulate a strategy to build engagement relationships with Hapuu and to build awareness of Council processes and practices within Hapuu.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.235 DW3.3 Formulate a strategy for increasing the use of Te Reo.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Jan-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.236 DW3.4 Create new staff positions related to Maori partnership.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Jan-2022

2.18.8 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.223 DW2.1 As a review of Waikato District Council's Conservation Strategy, investigate the development and implementation of a Local Indigenous Biodiversity Strategy for the District, jointly with Waikato Regional

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	90%

Action Progress Comments: The draft Taiao (Nature) in the Waikato Strategy hearings and deliberations has concluded. The strategy is with the designer and is going to the June Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee and will recommend to full Council for adoption.

Last Updated: 31-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.224 DW2.10 Ensure developers know rural drainage WRC requirements up front.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ana Maria d'Aubert - Consents Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: All developers are advised to check with Waikato Regional Council rural drainage requirements and to address relevant matters that might be applicable to a proposal.

Last Updated: 16-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.225 DW2.2 Review solid waste services.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Phillip Ellis - Solid Waste Team Leader	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	31-Jul-2023	30%

Action Progress Comments: Future strategy and plan being reset with Steering Group, including aligning with clearer national direction from MFE. Pathway to implementation includes DW waste assessment and new WMMP (objectives for service and what it will become, including actions) circa July 2023; and ultimately procurement planning for new contracts at end of current contract terms.

Last Updated: 25-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.226 DW2.3 Complete the ongoing data capture and condition assessment of storm water assets.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	01-Jul-2025	20%

Action Progress Comments: WDC and now Watercare are capturing Stormwater data on a catchment per year basis. It is expected this will take until 2025 to complete.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.227 DW2.4 Build a greater awareness of the Waikato Regional Council (WRC) storm water guidelines across WDC.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ana Maria d'Aubert - Consents Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	90%

Action Progress Comments: The Waikato Regional Council has two Technical Reports relating to stormwater accessible on its website: "Waikato Stormwater Management Guideline (TR2020/70)" and "Waikato Stormwater Runoff Modelling Guideline (TR2020/16)".

The Waikato District Council (Waters team) is developing its own "Waikato District Council Stormwater Design Guidelines, REV 9" which are scheduled to be finalized late May 2022. The Waikato District guidelines will make reference to the Waikato Regional guidelines, and when finalized they will be available on Waikato District Councils website.

Together all these guidelines will ensure developers and applicants for resource consent are aware of stormwater requirements for subdivisions and development.

This Actin is to be reassigned to the Waters team.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.228 DW2.5 Drive Low Impact Urban Design (LIUD) approaches through Catchment Management Plans and Integrated Catchment Management Plans.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ana Maria d'Aubert - Consents Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	90%

Action Progress Comments: The Waikato District Council does from time to time prepare catchment management plans. As and when they are reviewed or new ones prepared, they will encourage Low Impact Urban Design (LIUD) approaches. However, developers do not need to rely only on these plans in order to implement them.

LIUD approaches will be part of the "Waikato District Council Stormwater Design Guidelines, REV 9" which are scheduled to be finalized late May 2022 (and then available on the website). In addition, the Waikato Regional Council has two Technical Reports relating to stormwater accessible on its website that also encourage LIUD: "Waikato Stormwater Management Guideline (TR2020/70)" and "Waikato Stormwater Runoff Modelling Guideline (TR2020/16)".

Together all these guidelines encourage LIUD approaches in development where appropriate.

This Action is to be reassigned to the Waters team.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.229 DW2.6 Lead by example by applying low impact storm water approaches in Council works.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Initiative from Stormwater team (this initiative/action involves other entities as well as developers/public): Currently finalising WDC Stormwater Guidelines document to provide some guidance in terms of good design practices and preference to achieve multiple benefits from land development.

Last Updated: 21-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.230 DW2.7 Investigate options to promote LIUD, e.g. through a remission of Development Contributions or an eco-design advice service.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Will Gauntlett - Growth and Analytics Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	5%

Action Progress Comments: The first leg of this action will be considered as part of the next DC Policy Review. It has been added to an issues and options document. The second leg of this action needs to be split off and reassigned to another team.

Last Updated: 18-Apr-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.231 DW2.8 Develop a better understanding of the rural drainage asset base and roles and responsibilities (WDC and WRC).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Carole Nutt - Waters Contract Relationship Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Developed delineation table and graphics as part of the Stormwater Collaboration Workshops to demarcate ownership and maintenance responsibility of assets between WDC (Roading, Open Spaces), WSL, WRC and other entities. Delineation Graphics are also available on website for public use and information.

Last Updated: 21-Apr-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.232 DW2.9 Confirm the Council's approach to drainage, and ensure it is reflected in the consenting process.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ana Maria d'Aubert - Consents Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Where land drainage is relevant to a proposal, applicants are required to assess effects, level of risk to development, and propose methods and mitigation measures if necessary, prior to consent being granted.

Approaches to land drainage may be relevant at both a Waikato Regional Council and/or a Waikato District Council level.

The Waikato Regional Council has two Technical Reports relating to stormwater accessible on its website: "Waikato Stormwater Management Guideline (TR2020/70)" and "Waikato Stormwater Runoff Modelling Guideline (TR2020/16)".

The Waikato District Council (Waters team) is developing its own "Waikato District Council Stormwater Design Guidelines, REV 9" which are scheduled to be finalized late May 2022. The Waikato District guidelines will make reference to the Waikato Regional guidelines, and when finalized they will be available on Waikato District Councils website.

Together all these guidelines will ensure developers and applicants for resource consent are aware of land drainage and stormwater requirements for subdivisions and development.

Last Updated: 16-May-2022

2.18.9 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.261 DW7.1 Refer to Identity for cycling and walking tracks.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Action Progress Comments:*Last Updated: 17-Jan-2022*

Action Title: 9.1.5.262 DW7.2 Secure an improved bus service for the entire Waikato District.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	35%

Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.263 DW7.3 Support the Waikato train stations within the Auckland to Hamilton Corridor project.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete

Action Progress Comments: New bus services have been considered in the current (2021-2031) LTP for the Raglan (internal), Pokeno (to Papakura), Tamahere, Matangi and Te Kowhai communities (the latter three all connecting to Hamilton). Council approved funding in the 2021-2031 LTP for these services and submitted via Waikato Regional Council for Waka Kotahi funding. Due to national budget constraints and low national bus service patronage, the proposed services did not attract Waka Kotahi subsidy. Waikato District Council and Waikato Regional Council staff have reviewed the local share funding and propose to utilise the local share to wholly fund the Raglan, Tamahere, Matangi and Pokeno services as “trial services” in the first instance.

Unfortunately, the shortage of bus drivers in 2022 and the first half of 2023 has meant that the Regional Council has not been able to progress operationalising these services. The priority services have been identified as the Raglan internal service, the proposed Pokeno to Papakura service and the proposed Matangi-Tamahere-Hamilton service. The fee proposal for the Raglan internal service has been signed by the Regional Council and service implementation is underway.

Waikato Regional Council and Waikato District Council staff will be holding a workshop with the Tamahere Community Committee and the Matangi Community Committee on 2 May 2023 to discuss the proposed Matangi-Tamahere-Hamilton service. An online workshop is also planned for end May 2023 to discuss the proposed Pokeno to Papakura Railway Station service (and its potential implication for the existing Pokeno-Tuakau-Pukekohe service).

These will remain trial services until Waka Kotahi subsidy is obtained and the existing funding is exhausted. Council will be advocating for the subsidy and considering its own contribution for these services in its 2024-2034 LTP. Patronage uptake will be a key determinant as to whether these trials will continue or not.

Action Progress Comments: Council has now acquired the adjacent Go Bus land at the Raahui Pookeka | Huntly Railway Station for expanding the current park and ride facility. The land is being leased to Go Bus in the interim until the company has secured another site in Huntly/Ohinewai for its buses. Council will then need to undertake remedial works on the newly-acquired site to ensure that bus thoroughfare can be accommodated so that passengers can be picked up or disembark at the Raahui Pookeka | Huntly Railway Station.

The relocation of the historic Huntly Railway Station building to the Raahui Pookeka Railway Station is imminent (by end April 2023). The building will house the Huntly Waikato Coalfields Museum as well as provide an ablution facility for passengers.

With regards to potential railway stations in other towns (especially Te Kauwhata, Pokeno and Tuakau) there is currently no funding in the LTP for land acquisition and/or station construction. The development of a second passenger railway station in the district is subject to government funding and partnership support. Council (together with the Waikato Regional Council and Waka Kotahi) have however commenced the development of an indicative business case (feasibility study) for a railway station in the northern Waikato. This work is expected to be completed at the end of June 2023.

A detailed business case (for which there is no committed funding) will then have to be done for a potential station. Funding for the detailed business case will be a matter for consideration in the 2024-2034 LTP. Should there be further park and ride facilities created in the future, these would be constructed to cater for both cars and buses.

Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.264 DW7.4 Continue to monitor the consequences of State Highway projects on the Waikato District and its local communities, and when possible fulfil an advocacy role to positively influence outcomes.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	80%

Action Progress Comments: By all intents and purposes communities and road users have settled in well and accepted the new road configurations enabled by the Waikato Expressway. Whilst the reduced traffic flow through Huntly and Ngaruawahia has improved safety, it has meant a reduced customer base for the local businesses (due to reduced through traffic). However, these towns continue to grow as far as their population is concerned so this will be of benefit to local businesses. A structure plan is currently being developed for Ngaaruawaahia | Hopuhopu | Taupiri to accommodate long term growth.

The Expressway has improved safety and efficiency to Auckland and further south into the Waikato.

The main focus for Council staff at present (and in so far as access to the Expressway is concerned) relates to the Meremere A industrial area to east of the Waikato Expressway. The strategic issue at Meremere for Tainui Group Holdings (who administer the land on behalf of the tribe) is eventually unlocking the development of Meremere A for a major recycling centre of excellence (notwithstanding the infrastructure challenges). This is the long-term outcome that TGH aspires to.

TGH and WDC have held joint meetings with Waka Kotahi to explore options for the short term and long-term access to the Waikato Expressway from Meremere A. Waka Kotahi has advised TGH that resource consent will be required as a restricted discretionary activity under Rule TRPT-R4 (Traffic Generation) of the Proposed Waikato District Plan- Decisions Version, due to the number of heavy vehicles proposed for access in and out of the site. There are currently safety challenges at the Island Block Road/Waikato Expressway intersection. Specifically, in relation to HCV's using the left turn slip lane into Island Block Road as this will obscure visibility to those trying to exit Island Block Road.

Waka Kotahi wants to understand the adverse effects on the Island Block Road/Waikato Expressway intersection because of the additional heavy vehicle movements. This would best be done in the form of an Integrated Transport Assessment (ITA). Once a traffic engineer has been engaged by TGH, Waka Kotahi will organise a meeting prior to an ITA being undertaken to discuss the scope/methodology of the ITA contents.

Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.265 DW7.5 Strengthen cycling and walking trails along the river corridor.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Additional stages of Te Awa cycle trail now completed and open.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.2 Horotiu

2.2.1 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.24 HO6.3 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	5%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 01-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.25 HO6.1 Establish an Advanced Food Processing Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 23-Nov-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.26 HO6.2 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 01-May-2023

2.2.2 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.27 HO5.2 Investigate the opportunity for additional industrial land (also refer to District-wide proposals) (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Waikato 2070 does identify where to next with Industrial land in Horotiu and this will be considered as part of the assessment.

Last Updated: 01-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.28 HO5.1 Explore the potential for leisure, accommodation, and residential development between SH1 and the Waikato River (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The Proposed District Plan Decisions and Hamilton City Council Plan Change 2 identifies Residential and Leisure activities in Horotiu between Great South Road (former SH1) and the Waikato River. Both local authorities now have operative zoning.

148

Last Updated: 16-May-2022

2.2.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.29 HO1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Horotiu, consider the historic Maaori gardens and the business park.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

2.2.4 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.30 HO8.1 Fill in or improve the appearance of the open stormwater drains at the original AFFCO village in Park Road (7).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Keith Martin - Contractor - Waters Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	01-Jul-2025	0%

Action Progress Comments: More information required, if this is a 'nice to have' and stormwater is operating as it should. This may not be prioritised and could be considered in the next LTP period depending on funding availability.

Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

2.2.5 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.31 HO7.1 Form the paper road at the end of Sullivan Road and form a carpark to improve accessibility to the river (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 23-Nov-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.32 HO7.2 Provide longer distance walking and cycling connections to Te Kowhai and Horsham Downs (4) (refer to DW1.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

Action Progress Comments: to be considered in the next LTP Considerations, the 2021/24 programme is full

Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.33 HO7.3 Provide a walking and cycling route on the eastern side of the Waikato River between Horotiu and Ngaruawahia to create a loop with the Te Awa river ride (5) (also refer to DW1.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Deferred	01-Jul-2024	31-Mar-2026	1%

Action Progress Comments: unlikely to progress as does not align with trails strategy

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.34 HO7.4 Investigate safety improvements and traffic calming along River Road as well as connections to the proposed route along the eastern side of the river (HO73) to create a loop for recreational cycling (6).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Deferred	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	1%
Action Progress Comments: refer to 9.1.5.33 HO7.3, unlikely to progress as it does not align with trails strategy				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.35 HO7.5 Extend routes around the peat lakes for recreation.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	50%
Action Progress Comments: Lake Kainui walkway is now complete with access around the whole lake. Work is underway in an attempt to provide a similar asset at Rotokauri.				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.36 HO7.6 Improve the carpark at the bridge on Horotiu Bridge Road. Consider sealing it and adding toilets and rubbish bins.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Ongoing	01-Apr-2022	28-Feb-2023	-0%
Action Progress Comments: working with reserves team to complete works in year 3, this is a reserves project, but coordination between teams is required				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

2.3 Huntly

2.3.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.37 HU4.1 Prepare a reputational strategy that builds on local pride.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 26-May-2022</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.38 HU4.2 Promote waka ama on the Waikato River and lakes.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023</i>				

2.3.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.39 HU6.1 Promote a Puketirini and Kimihia (east mine) Employment, Skills and Technology Cluster that builds on existing uses (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%
Action Progress Comments: Have Connected with Charlie Young, Jenifer, Murry, Greg Allen.				
<i>Last Updated: 12-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.40 HU6.2 Promote a Puketirini and Kimihia (east mine) Building Fabrication Construction Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 25-Nov-2021</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.41 HU6.3 Continue to support the youth strategy to tie in with the development of the abovementioned proposed clusters (refer to HU6.1 and HU6.2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.42 HU6.5 Determine key town centre strategy and management needs (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2023	10%
Action Progress Comments: Council is scoping up work to determine opportunities to revitalise the Huntly Town Centre. This will connect in with other Capital works planned in and around the Township.				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.43 HU6.6 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the
Last Updated: 01-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.44 HU6.4 Support the Huntly Wearable Arts event. Consider increasing its frequency and creating more economic spin-off (e.g. skills development).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: In 2021 the Creative Communities Scheme and Huntly Community Board support this event. The event is held biannually and community led.
Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.47 HU6.7 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).
Last Updated: 01-May-2023

2.3.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.45 HU1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Huntly, consider the lakes, power, mining, bricks, arts, and promote as a strong rugby league centre.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started
Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023

2.3.4 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.46 HU2.1 Prepare a strategy for the clean-up of the lakes and addressing any other environmental issues resulting from mining activity.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: This has not been planned for apart from minor planting and renewal of existing assets (walkways, park furniture etc)
Last Updated: 13-Jun-2023

2.3.5 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.48 HU7.1 Support the central interchange off the Waikato Expressway (watching brief).

Responsible Person	152	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager		Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
<p>Action Progress Comments: There is no support from Waka Kotahi for a central interchange either in the vicinity of Kimihia Road or Mc Vie Road now that the Waikato Expressway has been completed. This was despite a 2017 report done by Aecom which recommended that a central interchange be constructed as part of the then NZTA's Waikato Expressway Huntly section contract works. A site visit was also undertaken by Mayor Allan, Cr Patterson, Cr Lynch and WDC and NZTA staff in 2020 during which our elected members advocated for an interchange. However Waka Kotahi has indicated that the case for an interchange does not stack up considering the agency's other priorities and funding constraints. Council and Waka Kotahi's focus is now on improving the Raahui Pookeka Huntly Railway Station. Staff recommend that the central interchange action be reconsidered by the Huntly Community Board since it is unlikely to get any traction.</p> <p><i>Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023</i></p>					

Action Title: 9.1.5.49 HU7.3 Promote a new pedestrian river bridge (4).					
Responsible Person		Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Rebecca Law - Reserves Planner		Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
<p>Action Progress Comments: This is something for consideration as part of the Connectivity Strategy that is under development. Consideration will need to be given to see how this fits with the two existing pedestrian crossing point over the Waikato River.</p> <p><i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i></p>					

Action Title: 9.1.5.50 HU7.2 Support the production of a cycle/walking strategy that links the lakes, river and town centre.					
Responsible Person		Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager		In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Jun-2023	30%
<p>Action Progress Comments: No specific cycle/walking strategy in the pipeline for Huntly. However we are currently developing the Connectivity Strategy which will incorporate aspirations for Huntly re. walking/cycling. We will be engaging with Community Boards during the consultation period of the strategy. Roading team working with Open Spaces Team to implement on-road walking links under LCLR Programme</p> <p><i>Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023</i></p>					

2.3.6 Other

Action Title: 9.1.5.51 HU8.1 - Support the creation and implementation of a resource recovery centre					
Responsible Person		Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Phillip Ellis - Solid Waste Team Leader		In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	25%
<p>Action Progress Comments: Huntly - reconfiguration of site (capex component) to occur once Metrowaste has new recycling sorting plant built and operating at Rotowaro Rd site (imminent). Some delays on getting operating model and operator on site due to staffing/resource issues. Commercial model is for public drop off with external arrangements with others for supply/reuse of product. Some uncertainty re potential for dog pound being co-located at site.</p> <p>Tuakau - in detailed design phase. Multi-use site (solid waste, roading, dog pound satellite) at Bollard Rd which is greenfield site. Lags Huntly for implementation in LTP. Similar commercial model to Huntly but with Smart also co-located at site. Some issues re dog pound certainty but future proofing.</p> <p><i>Last Updated: 25-May-2022</i></p>					

2.4 Matangi

2.4.1 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.53 MA6.1 Establish a Heritage, Cultural and New Economy Business Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	51%

Action Progress Comments: Matangi Heritage Committee is undertaking a cluster signage project to promote this activity.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.54 MA6.2 Produce a village centre plan (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Matangi is not consider a growth node. At present Council does not have resource or budget allocated for a village centre plan. Priority could be considered as part of the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan. Donna has met with the Matangi Community Committee and talked though what the community could do themselves. An action was to circulate to the community some examples of Village Plans that could be used as a template.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.55 MA6.3 Support landowners' initiatives to develop more mixed use and retail areas where deemed appropriate by the Council (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The Proposed District Plan Decision, supports mixed use development sought by local land owner.

Last Updated: 16-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.56 MA6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.57 MA6.5 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2021	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.4.2 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.52 MA1.1 Build on the strong identity of Matangi based on the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.2 to 1.4). Consider the Matangi Factory history and current use.

Responsible Person	154	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor		Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: <i>Last Updated: 02-Dec-2021</i>					

2.4.3 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.58 MA7.1 Provide traffic calming and improved parking opportunities along the central section of Tauwhare Road.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	10%
Action Progress Comments: Deferred to next financial year due to late adoption of NZTA budgets <i>Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.59 MA7.2 Construct a footpath along Matangi Road up to Fuchsia Lane (3), and create further connections to accommodate walking from the village centre to Hillcrest.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant J. Tregidga -	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	01-Mar-2022	80%
Action Progress Comments: matangi to fuschia lane complete <i>Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.60 MA7.3 Implement a loop bus service through Matangi and Newstead.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	10%
Action Progress Comments: Waikato District Council and Waikato Regional Council have organised a workshop with both the Tamahere Community Committee and the Matangi Community Committee on 2 May to discuss the proposed bus service between Matangi, Tamahere and Hamilton. <i>Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023</i>				

2.5 Mercer

2.5.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.61 MC4.2 Consider the development of a community facility with a meeting place, possibly in the Fire Station (2). Consider incorporating public toilets.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Negotiations continue with FENZ and owners of other buildings within Mercer but no definitive solution has been found.

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.62 MC4.1 Reconfigure the existing playground and upgrade playing fields.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: The current playground is a converted old tennis court. Land issues are being sorted where the playing fields are currently, and usage of fields also determines the need for upgrades -\$100,000 for playground, \$600,000 to upgrade playing fields. This doesn't include the clubrooms, which are in a state of disrepair. Discussions for associated Reserve Management Plan inclusion under Sports Park Reserve Management Plan for Mercer Domain once this process has been resolved. This will provide strategic direction for a reserve area.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

2.5.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.63 MC6.2 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.64 MC6.3 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.65 MC6.1 Produce a village centre plan, placing an emphasis on destination, specialty retail and tourism, recreation, visitor and environmental aspects. Consider incorporating the relevant strategic opportunities proposed in the Local Area Blueprint.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Mercer is not consider a growth node. At present Council does not have resource or budget allocated for a village centre plan. Priority could be considered as part of the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

156

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.5.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.66 MC1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Mercer, consider tourism, wine, cheese, and skydiving.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 02-Jun-2023

2.5.4 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.67 MC8.1 Consider providing appropriate facilities to address impact of freedom campers.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Needs clarification on the impact is from freedom camping in this community, whether there is a need for toilets, showers, bins, hardstand, dump station, BBQ facilities and shade. There is no current wastewater or water infrastructure. This would need to be factored into any budgets, as well as ongoing costs for maintenance and operation of these facilities. Land would be required for these facilities. \$750,000 land acquisition, \$1 million for double cubicle toilet, shower and sinks. Mercer does not have waters infrastructure so all facilities would need to be self sufficient with water supply and treatment of sewerage.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

2.5.5 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.68 MC3.1 Identify and preserve Maaori landmarks. Restore and commemorate historical Marae.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Ngahina Armstrong-Nield - Iwi and Community Partnerships Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 08-Dec-2021

2.5.6 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.69 MC2.1 Explore opportunities for wetland preservation and a park (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Area identified is subject to Treaty Settlement. This will have potential implications for all reserve areas north of Kimikimi Road. Staff awaiting direction from Crown on matter.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

2.5.7 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.70 MC7.1 Increase parking and improve roading infrastructure. Consider a new overbridge and the relocation of the sliproad.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

2.6 Meremere

2.6.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.71 MM4.1 Provide support to beautification initiatives, assisting with community pride in the place. Consider streetscape, entrance signs, house numbers etc.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	68%

Action Progress Comments: Meremere has started a letterbox beautification project. Supported by Spring Hill prison fund.

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.72 MM4.2 Leverage more activities off the Hall. Seek sponsorship, e.g. for heating (considering solar power) and equipment (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tracey Morgan - Acting Facilities Team Leader	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	-0%

Action Progress Comments: WDC have employed a Halls officer who are able to support Hall committees throughout the district to undertake these types of activities.

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.73 MM4.3 Prepare a community engagement framework describing how to enable new initiatives, and strengthening relationships between existing committees and the community.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	2%

Action Progress Comments: Currently in discussion with various committees

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.74 MM4.4 Prepare a reputational strategy that builds on local pride.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.75 MM4.5 Develop youth engagement initiatives to address the issue of youth leaving school early.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.76 MM4.6 Consider ways to provide more recreational opportunities and facilities for children.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	70%

Action Progress Comments: New playground and skatepark under way which will provide these activities. Council led with community engagement. (CAMMS PR-21319).

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

2.6.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.77 MM6.1 Prepare an employment strategy for rangitahi that supports TGH efforts (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments: Workforce development a priority in ED new work program .

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.78 MM6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.79 MM6.5 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.80 MM6.2 Establish a Synergy Park / Clean Production cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 09-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.81 MM6.3 Establish a High Performance Vehicle Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments: Discussions in place with Hampton downs and Meremere speedway to work in collaboration and potentially expand operations.

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

2.6.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.82 MM1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Meremere, consider the power station, motorsport, and Whangamarino wetlands.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%
Action Progress Comments: Not yet started				
<i>Last Updated: 26-May-2022</i>				

2.6.4 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.83 MM3.1 Celebrate the Redoubt, linking it to a wider Maori heritage experience (Tuakau, Pokeno, to Rangiriri etc) (1). Add some associated commercial zoning.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	-0%
Action Progress Comments: The ramparts and trenches that formed the core of the Rangiriri Pa's defences are ready, and the reconstructed North Waikato pa formally re-opened on 23 April 2022. Further Community Led projects could be done to connect to Meremere, Mercer, Pokeno and Tuakau as part of the Land Wars story. Consideration for additional Commercial Land Use has not yet been undertaken.				
<i>Last Updated: 30-May-2023</i>				

2.6.5 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.84 MM7.1 Support continued access off the Waikato Expressway.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	In Progress	01-Feb-2022	30-Jun-2023	50%
Action Progress Comments: The main focus for Council staff at present in so far as access to the Expressway is concerned, relates to to the Meremere A industrial area. The strategic issue at Meremere for Tainui Group Holdings (administer the land on behalf of the tribe) is eventually unlocking the development of Meremere A for a major recycling centre of excellence notwithstanding the infrastructure challenges. This is the long-term outcome that TGH aspires to. TGH and WDC have held joint meetings with Waka Kotahi to explore options for the short term and long-term access to the Waikato Expressway from Meremere A. Waka Kotahi has advised TGH that resource consent will be required as a restricted discretionary activity under Rule TRPT-R4 (Traffic Generation) of the Proposed Waikato District Plan- Decisions Version, due to the number of heavy vehicles proposed for access in and out of the site. There are currently safety challenges at the Island Block Road/State Highway 1 intersection. Specifically, in relation to HCV's using the left turn slip lane into Island Block Road as this will obscure visibility to those trying to exit Island Block Road.				
Waka Kotahi wants to understand the adverse effects on the Island Block Road/State Highway 1 intersection because of the additional heavy vehicle movements. This would best be done in the form of an Integrated Transport Assessment (ITA). Once a traffic engineer has been engaged by TGH, Waka Kotahi will organise a meeting prior to an ITA being undertaken to discuss the scope/methodology of the ITA contents.				
<i>Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023</i>				

Action Title: 9.1.5.85 MM7.2 Consider an overbridge that also allows access to the river and Te Araroa Trail.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: This project is not in current LTP				
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>				

2.7 Ngaruawahia

2.7.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.86 NG4.1 Undertake strategic conversations around Council-owned land and halls for reinvigoration of community assets (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Michelle Brown - Acting Strategic Property Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	23%

Action Progress Comments: Update from Cr Gibb 18/7/22:
Last Updated: 26-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.87 NG4.2 Produce a planting plan and social space at Te Mana o te Rangi reserve (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	50%

Action Progress Comments: Ngaruawahia Community Board and WDC staff have developed this in conjunction. Signs installed to identify the site - complete.
Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.88 NG4.3 Work with relevant entities to support the strategy for youth initiatives.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started.
Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.89 NG4.4 Address freedom camping issues.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Tanya O'Shannessey - Monitoring Team Leader	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments: Compliance monitoring ongoing - often in partnership with Reserves Team. Freedom Camping Bylaw 2016 will commence its review in Nov/Dec 2022 with a focus on increased signage, assessment of problem areas and a strong connectedness to the Reserves Bylaw. Particular attention to be paid to Freedom Camping hotspots in Ngaruawahia.
Last Updated: 27-Apr-2022

2.7.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.90 NG6.1 Undertake initiatives to ensure tidy commercial and industrial street frontages.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Roller door project underway. Clean and re- instate murals on shop frontages along Great South rd. Ngaruawahia Community Board initiative with WDC support.
Last Updated: 31-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.91 NG6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

161

Action Title: 9.1.5.92 NG6.5 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Sep-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

The Ngaruawahia Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Ngaruawahia community.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.93 NG6.2 Promote water based recreation opportunities, including the development of a café (4).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.94 NG6.3 Promote the idea of recreational opportunities in and around the Hakarimata Ranges, consider a gondola or a waterslide (5).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	0%

Action Progress Comments: The Hakarimata Ranges is a sensitive natural environment and promotion of a gondola or waterslide could have a negative impact on the natural environment.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.7.3 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.95 NG5.1 Consider extending the business zone (see strategic opportunities diagram) (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Sep-2023	40%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.7.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.96 NG1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Ngaruawahia, consider Te Kiingitanga, the confluence of the Waipa and Waikato Rivers, and the Hakarimata Ranges.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.97 NG1.2 Erect signage at the six entry points into Ngaruawahia, refer to its unique local identity and to promote tourism (also refer to NG1.1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021

2.7.5 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.98 NG8.1 Install or upgrade toilet facilities (11).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Megan May - Acting General Manager - Service Delivery	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Toilets at The Point Reserve have been upgraded and new toilets have been installed at Centennial Park. No other toilets identified for installation in Ngaruawahia

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.7.6 Iwi

Action Title: 9.1.5.99 NG3.1 Promote local cultural tourism by local iwi (also refer to DW1.4).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments: Discussions started with Tainui Waka Tourism inc to promote tourism through our Open Waikato brand.

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

2.7.7 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.100 NG2.1 Undertake a pest control project in the Hakarimata Ranges. Consider this as an opportunity for a community-led conservation project (also refer to DW2.1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Hakarimata Range is managed by Department of Conservation. Waikato District Council owns a very small portion. DoC is keen to engage the community in projects like this.

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.7.8 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.101 NG7.3 Provide longer distance walking and cycling connections to Te Otamanui (7), Glen Massey (8), the eastern side of the Waikato River to Horotiu (9), and Taupiri (10) (also refer to DW1.3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

Action Progress Comments: This project is not in current LTP, no projects in the trail strategy for these locations

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.102 NG7.2 Investigate opportunities for traffic calming and speed reductions on Great South Road through the town centre and for improved east-west connectivity for pedestrians and cyclists (6).

Responsible Person	163	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager		Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments: This project is not in current LTP, this is being developed as part of the structure plan 2024/26 LTP					
<i>Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022</i>					

Action Title: 9.1.5.103 NG7.1 Upgrade pedestrian connections in the town centre and to the Te Awa river ride.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%
Action Progress Comments:				
<i>Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021</i>				

2.8 Ohinewai

2.8.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.106 OH4.1 Review accessibility to / for emergency services.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.107 OH4.2 Support community initiatives for an area tidy up, addressing rubbish and weeds.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started.
Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.108 OH4.3 Extend the Council's fruit tree planting programme.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: This is underway in other parts of the district. It is community led but Council's Events team is happy to facilitate this.
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.109 OH4.4 Undertake the paint initiative for 'Cowboys'.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:
Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.110 OH4.5 Assist with the set up of social media and website communications within the community.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Emma Edgar - Executive Manager - Communications & Engagement	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	50%

Action Progress Comments: A guideline/ toolkit is being developed to provide branding and content strategy advice and will be used to provide a framework for others who are keen to explore digital communications options. In
Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.111 OH4.6 Provide Council support to local events.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	90%

Action Progress Comments: Community run events happening on Council land are processed through our Events Officer.
Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.112 OH4.7 Support the expansion of the school and increase in childcare provision. Consider whether the hall can double.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021

2.8.2 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.113 OH5.1 Investigate the potential for larger residential lots west of SH1, and a mix of larger and smaller lots (for affordability) east of SH1.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: There is a small allowance for large lot residential on the western side of SH1. The Proposed District Plan Decision provides for residential development on the eastern side of SH1.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.114 OH5.2 If development application progresses, then ensure possible expansion addresses its own impacts (such as traffic, noise, and visual). Ensure it contributes positively to the local community, e.g. by offering more convenience retail, improving housing affordability, new walking and cycling connections, improving the viability of the school etc. (2)

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Sandra Kelly - Programme Manager District Plan	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 12-May-2022

2.8.3 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.104 OH1.1 Build a strong identity based on a village community, river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area (refer to DW1.1 to 1.4). For Ohinewai, consider the ferry landing.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Lianne Van Den Bemd - Community Led Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments: Not yet started

Last Updated: 26-May-2022

2.8.4 Infrastructure

Action Title: 9.1.5.119 OH8.1 Insert fibre with other services.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	30%

Action Progress Comments: Cr Whyte reports that fibre has been laid at Ohinewai North and South Roads and vicinity, due to planned Sleepyhead Development. Therefore in progress.

Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

2.8.5 Nature

Action Title: 9.1.5.105 OH2.1 Clarify the future of the reserve (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
--------------------	--------	------------	----------	------------

Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning

In Progress

01-Jul-2021

30-Jun-2024

80%

Action Progress Comments: Natural Reserve Management Plan was adopted in December 2018. Staff to execute actions identified within this document. Lake Ohinewai ecological enhancement and access project underway.

Cr Whyte's understanding is that this has been clarified and this action could be considered completed.

Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

2.8.6 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.115 OH7.1 Create tracks on the stop bank along the Waikato River and around Lake Ohinewai (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2024	5%

Action Progress Comments: WORKING WITH DEVELOPER ON THE SLEEPYHEAD PROGRAMME

Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.116 OH7.1a Create tracks on the stop bank along the Waikato River

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2024	5%

Action Progress Comments: WORKING WITH SLEEPERHEAD DEVELOPEMENT ON THIS

Last Updated: 02-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.117 OH7.1b Create tracks around Lake Ohinewai (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	80%

Action Progress Comments: Lake Ohinewai ecological enhancement and access project underway.

Last Updated: 14-Jun-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.118 OH7.2 Add a pedestrian/cycling 'clip-on' onto the Tahuna Road bridge over the railway and over SH1 (4).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Deferred	01-Jul-2022	30-Jun-2024	1%

Action Progress Comments: This project is not in current LTP and will be part of future consents for Sleepyhead development providing a separate pedestrian bridge

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

2.9 Pokeno

2.9.1 Communities

Action Title: 9.1.5.22 PO4.1 Consider the need for a sports park. Consider whether Munro Reserve can be improved for this or whether the park in the western growth area can be expanded (1).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Glyn Morgan - Open Spaces Team Leader & Acting Team Leader Reserve Planning	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	55%

Action Progress Comments: Initial earthworks of Munro Park completed. Further earthworks happening next Summer to prepare site for development. Draft concept plan developed and socialised with community. More in depth community engagement planned to confirm details of each asset - playground, skatepark/pump track etc.

Last Updated: 12-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.23 PO4.2 Establish library, community and customer services and / or facilities.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Shelby Spain - Customer Delivery Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	10%

Action Progress Comments: Currently in the EPMO space & Facilities

Last Updated: 26-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.120 PO4.3 Work with MOE to provide adequate schooling facilities for the current and future population.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Julie Dolan - Economic and Community Development Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021

2.9.2 Economy

Action Title: 9.1.5.123 PO6.1 Prepare a detailed retail needs calculation, preliminary transport and open space options (4), followed by the production of a town centre strategy that reconciles the current and future retail, employment, community facility, and open space needs.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	85%

Action Progress Comments: The Pokeno Public Realm Concept Plan was adopted by Council on 11 May 2022. This identifies public space, open space connections, transport links and urban form for the Pokeno Town Centre. The retail needs assessment is the remaining outstanding piece of work to be completed.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.124 PO6.2 Establish an Advanced Food Processing Cluster.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Kelvin Forsman - Economic Development Advisor	Not Started	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	0%

Action Progress Comments:

Last Updated: 13-Dec-2021

Action Title: 9.1.5.125 PO6.3 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for office development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.126 PO6.4 Identify if, how much, and where, possible additional employment land for retail development is needed beyond the zoning in the Proposed District Plan.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	In Progress	01-Jun-2022	30-Sep-2023	20%

Action Progress Comments: The Business Assessment (part of the Housing and Business Assessment as required under the NPS-UD) update is currently underway by the Future Proof partnership and expected to be completed by the end of June 2023. This will determine if there is a shortfall or not of Employment land. Employment land includes industry, commercial and retail which result in the following district plan zones (Industrial, Town Centre, Commercial and Local Centre zones).

The Ngaruawahia Structure Plan is currently underway and will look at all land use within the Ngaruawahia community.

Last Updated: 30-May-2023

2.9.3 Growth

Action Title: 9.1.5.121 PO5.1 Consider support residential expansion (2).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: The Proposed District Plan Decision allows for additional residential development in several areas across the township.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.122 PO5.2 Consider supporting the Village Zone expansion (3).

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Completed	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	100%

Action Progress Comments: Village zoning (now called large lot residential) is not supported in townships as it does not deliver on our density targets. A new Future Urban Zone area was identified in the Proposed District Plan Decisions on the western side of the Pokeno township adjacent to the existing large lot residential zone.

Last Updated: 17-May-2022

2.9.4 Identity

Action Title: 9.1.5.21 PO1.1 Build a strong identity based on the river corridor, and the unique qualities of the local area.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Jason Marconi - Economic Development Advisor	In Progress	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2024	11%

Action Progress Comments: Pokeno Community Committee have approached WDC for funding for community website.

2.9.5 Transport

Action Title: 9.1.5.127 PO7.1 Investigate establishing wider transport links with employment areas, Tuakau and SH1. Consider a new underpass and / or bypass.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Grant Tregidga - Roading Manager	Not Started	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	0%

Action Progress Comments: Long-term project not in current LTP and will be developed as part of the structure plan for the next LTP

Last Updated: 01-Jun-2022

Action Title: 9.1.5.128 PO7.2 Work with the truck stop owner to address community concerns.

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Donna Tracey - Strategic Planning Manager	Ongoing	01-Jul-2021	30-Jun-2022	-0%

Action Progress Comments: Council has had several conversations with the owner of the land where the truck stop is located in relation to proposed upgrades to Great South Road.

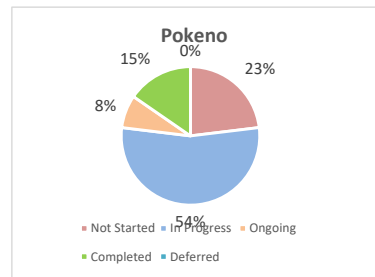
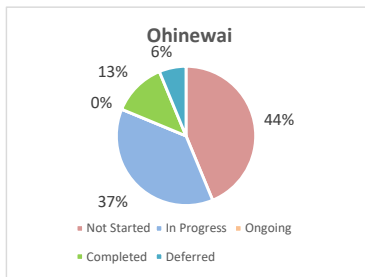
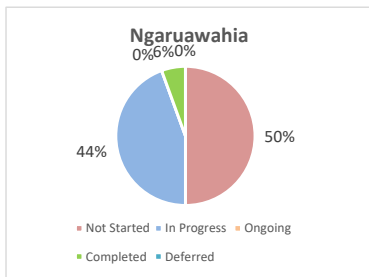
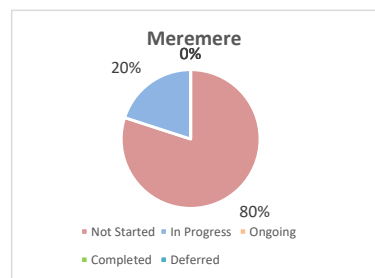
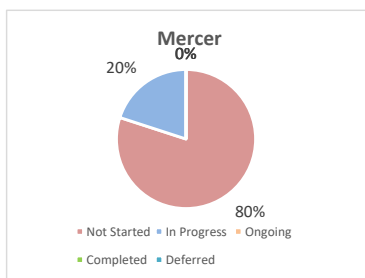
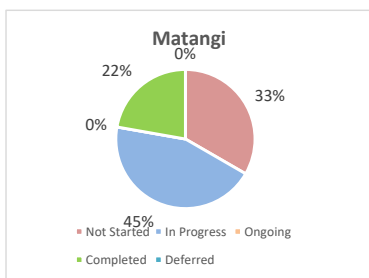
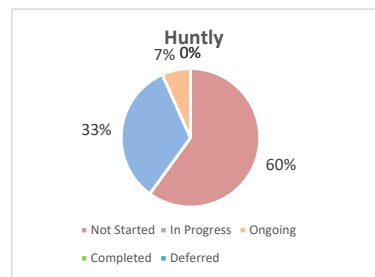
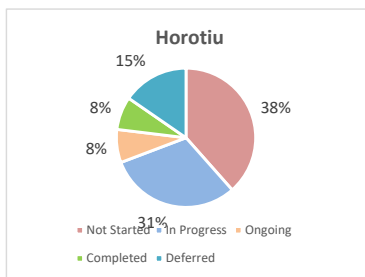
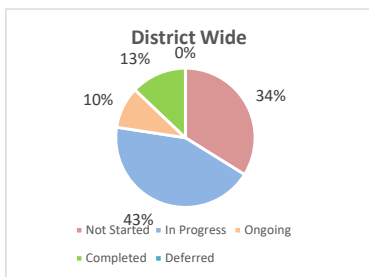
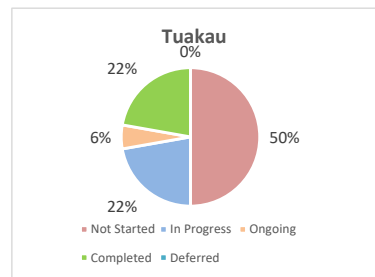
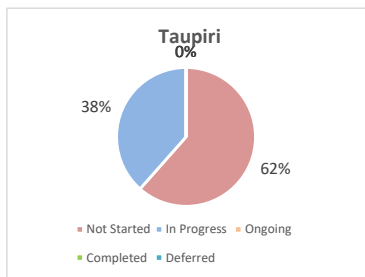
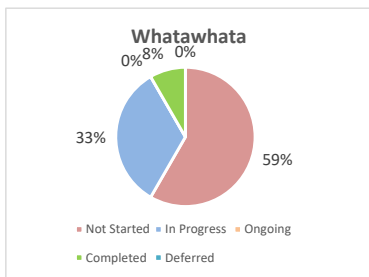
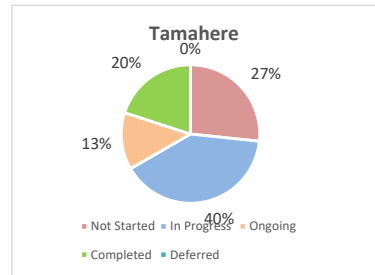
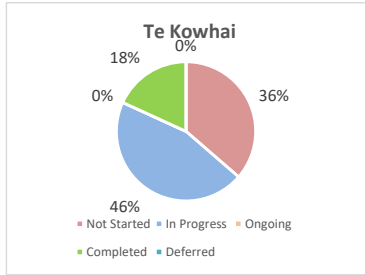
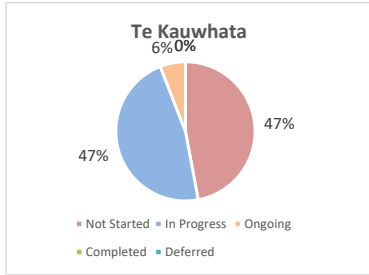
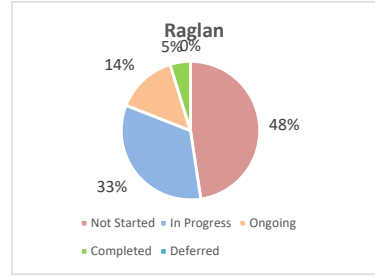
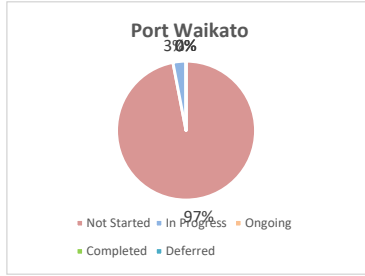
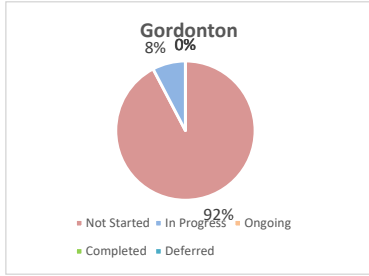
Last Updated: 30-May-2023

Action Title: 9.1.5.129 PO7.3 Create a Park and Ride for public transport

Responsible Person	Status	Start Date	End Date	% Complete
Vishal Ramduny - Strategic Initiatives and Partnership Manager	In Progress	01-Jul-2024	30-Jun-2026	50%

Action Progress Comments: Council currently owns land for a future railway station at Pokeno. There is an opportunity for a park and ride facility associated with this. Preliminary staff assessment indicates that, besides a railway platform, the land can accommodate about 60 car parking spaces and 4 bus layovers. However, there is currently no funding in the current (2021-2031) LTP for construction of either the railway platform or the park and ride facility. Any future location of a railway station here would need to be assessed against having one in Tuakau and Te Kauwhata - with consideration given to both short and long term benefits of the location as well as costs. This is work that is currently underway through the development of an indicative business case (feasibility study) to consider the most feasible location of a potential railway station in the northern Waikato. This work is expected to be completed at the end of June 2023. A detailed business case (for which there is no committed funding) will then have to be done for a potential station. Funding for the detailed business case will be a matter for consideration in the 2024-2034 LTP. The construction of a second passenger railway station in the district is subject to government funding and partnership support as this cannot be solely ratepayer funded.

Last Updated: 19-Apr-2023



Waikato District Council Blueprint – Feedback Wanted

We would like your feedback on the current District-wide Blueprint and/or Local Area Blueprints initiatives that could be considered for delivery in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

Complete 10 questions in this online survey by 30 June 2023.

Your feedback will add value to the Blueprint, which represents you District and community's vision for the future and form part of the 2024-2034 Long Term plan development process.

You can find the current District-wide and Local Area Blueprints ("the Blueprint") here

<https://www.waikatodistrict.govt.nz/your-council/plans-policies-and-bylaws/plans/blueprints>

1. Name:
2. Email:
3. Are you a member of a Local Community Board or Local Community Committee?
 - Yes (Please proceed to Question 4)
 - No (Please proceed to Question 5)
4. Which Local Community Board or Local Community Committee are you a member of?
5. Which of the Local Area Blueprints are you interested in? (Please circle one)
 - Gordonton Local Area Blueprint
 - Horotiu Local Area Blueprint
 - Huntly/Raahui Pookeka Local Area Blueprint
 - Matangi Local Area Blueprint
 - Mercer Local Area Blueprint
 - Ngaruawahia Local Area Bluepring
 - Ohinewai Local Area Blueprint
 - Pokeno Local Area Blueprint
 - Port Waikato Local Area Blueprint
 - Tamahere Local Area Blueprint
 - Taupiri Local Area Blueprint
 - Te Kauwhata Local Area Blueprint

- Te Kowhai Local Area Blueprint
 - Tuakau Local Area Blueprint
 - Raglan Local Area Blueprint
 - Rangiriri Local Area Blueprint
 - Whatawhata Local Area Blueprint
6. Which existing Blueprint initiative(s) (e.g. HU2.1) would you like Waikato District Council to consider for delivery through the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan?
 7. Which existing Blueprint initiative(s) (e.g. HU2.1) would you like Waikato District Council to **not** consider (e.g. completed or no longer relevant) for the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan?
 8. Which existing Blueprint initiative(s) (e.g. HU2.1) would you like to change and for what reasons?
 9. If you could add **one** more initiative to the Blueprint, what would it be?
 10. Please let us know if you have any further comments or suggestions?

To	Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Adaptive Management Planning and Port Waikato Erosion
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	Jim Ebenhoh, Planning and Policy Manager
Authorised by:	Clive Morgan General Manager Community Growth

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

To inform the Committee of the work that has been undertaken with the Port Waikato community and other stakeholders in the past decade on coastal erosion issues, including the activities of the Port Waikato Resilience Group since 2020.

AND

To seek approval for continued work on long-term adaptive management planning for Port Waikato, and other communities, via a Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, as outlined in the attached Scoping Report.

AND

To seek confirmation of the existing Council position of managed retreat with respect to public assets at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato, with limitations on any investment in physical protection works, along with commitment of ongoing advice and support for private properties affected by erosion at Sunset Beach.

AND

To seek confirmation that the Council does not wish to invoke the emergency works powers of Section 330 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for coastal protection works at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato, for the protection of either private or public property, and will not transfer such powers to another entity.

2. Executive summary

Whakaraapopototanga matua

Coastal erosion at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato is severe and ongoing, and causing significant concern for members of the community. The community is also facing other natural hazards such as the potential for river flooding and land instability. Other communities such as Raglan are also facing coastal erosion issues, or other natural hazards.

This report summarises the current and ongoing coastal erosion issues at Sunset Beach, summarises progress on the Port Waikato Adaptive Management Planning project undertaken with the Port Waikato Resilience Group (PWRG), and the technical advice that Council has received to date regarding causes and potential management options for erosion at Sunset Beach.

Staff recommend that the Council confirms its existing position of managed retreat with respect to public assets at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato. This means that the long-term approach is to relocate facilities rather than defend them, and that any protection works for the carpark and other community facilities would need to be short-term, cost-effective, and culturally and environmentally responsible, with the purpose of attempting to slow erosion while a longer-term relocation / retreat plan is developed.

Related to this, staff recommend that Council re-affirm its position regarding the funding of works to respond to erosion, and that hard/engineered structures at Sunset Beach are not supported based on independent technical advice received.

Staff also recommend that the Council resolves not to invoke the emergency works powers of Section 330 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for coastal protection works at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato, for the protection of either private or public property, and resolves not to transfer such powers to another entity.

Staff recommend that long-term adaptive management planning work continues for Port Waikato, and extends to other communities such as Raglan, via a broader and more robust Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, as outlined in the attached Scoping Report. This will require further investment in effective communications with the community and consideration of how managed retreat could be better enabled and supported for private properties affected by erosion at Port Waikato and elsewhere.

Staff recommend that the Council formally invite the Waikato Regional Council to form a Joint Committee (or Joint Working Party) for the Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, and to facilitate the formation of a Community Panel(s) and/or Community Reference Group(s), as recommended by the attached Scoping Report.

These decisions are collectively considered to be of moderate significance, given their high importance to one community in the district, and eventually to other parts of the District.

Engagement has occurred with the Port Waikato community and key stakeholders such as Waikato Regional Council over several years, including the Port Waikato Resilience Group since 2020.

3. Staff recommendations Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

That the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee:

- a. Endorses the ongoing provision of advice to the Port Waikato community on coastal processes and short- and medium-term actions to slow coastal erosion at Sunset Beach.
 - b. Confirms Council's existing position of managed retreat with respect to public assets at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato. This means that the long-term approach is to relocate public facilities rather than defend them, and that any protection works for the carpark and other community facilities would need to be short-term, cost-effective, and culturally and environmentally responsible, with the purpose of potentially slowing erosion while a longer-term relocation / retreat plan is developed.
 - c. Confirms that it accepts the independent expert and peer reviewed advice Council has received to date that the installation of hard structures of any kind to prevent or slow coastal erosion at Sunset Beach is not appropriate and may exacerbate erosion effects.
 - d. Confirms that Council will not directly fund any further sand transfer trials or other physical works aimed at protecting public or private property at Sunset Beach in Port Waikato, in the absence of a targeted rate to fund such works.
 - e. Resolves not to invoke the emergency works powers of Section 330 of the Resource Management Act 1991 for coastal protection works at Sunset Beach, Port Waikato, for the protection of either private or public property, and resolves not to transfer such powers to another entity.
 - f. Confirms it will investigate opportunities to better enable and support managed retreat for private properties affected by erosion at Sunset Beach in Port Waikato, including through the expected Climate Adaptation Act.
 - g. Approves the prioritisation and continuation of work towards a long-term adaptive management plan for the wider Port Waikato community, and for other communities such as Raglan, via a broader and more robust Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, as outlined in the attached Scoping Report.
 - h. Agrees to formally invite the Waikato Regional Council to form a Joint Committee (or Joint Working Party) for the Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, and to facilitate the formation of a Community Panel(s) and/or Community Reference Group(s), as recommended by the attached Scoping Report.
-

4. Background

Koorero whaimaarama

A report to Council in December 2019 provided detailed background on coastal erosion issues at Port Waikato.

In brief, Port Waikato has historically experienced cyclical coastal erosion; that is, there have been times of erosion followed by times of accretion. Council obtained consultant advice in 2014-2016 that led to a subsequent decision to relocate the community hall when erosion reached the recommended 'trigger point' of 7.5 metres from the building.

The community has continued to experience severe coastal erosion which has worsened rapidly in the past few years, particularly affecting public property and private properties at the southern end of Oceanview Road.

Setup and achievements of Port Waikato Resilience Group (PWRG)

A public information session hosted by Council in October 2019 at the Sunset Beach Surf Life Saving Club revealed the community's concern about a perceived lack of action by Council in relation to erosion hazards. Following that meeting, Council staff developed a coordinated approach to communication and activities relating to Port Waikato including carpark maintenance, drainage, public toilets, signage, and guidance on possible consent pathways relating to demolition, rebuild and relocation.

In addition to these immediate responses, Council also recognised the need to embark on a longer-term adaptive management planning process, in partnership with the community and other stakeholders, to develop a resilience strategy for Port Waikato in the face of various natural hazards.

At its 7 December 2019 meeting Council resolved that *"\$50,000 be approved from the Disaster Recovery Fund for independent facilitation and technical advice for an adaptive management planning process with the Port Waikato community, local iwi, other agencies and stakeholders in order to build resilience to natural hazards, noting that additional funding is likely to be required in future years and will also be sought from external sources."*

Dedicated funding for adaptive management planning has been included in the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan (\$70,000 for the first three years, with inflation adjustments) to continue this project and eventually undertake similar projects with other communities.

The adaptive management planning process is summarised in the Co-Design Report approved by Council at its May 2021 meeting. The benefits of this approach include that it makes decisions now based on the best information currently available, while preserving flexibility for future decision-making to take place based on new and/or improved information. Various 'trigger points' can be programmed so that actions can be planned for when a specified event occurs (e.g. erosion to within a certain distance of a building), without needing to know today exactly when that might occur.

Adaptive management planning in the context of coastal erosion and flooding is NOT the same thing as managed retreat; it provides for the full spectrum of options including defence, accommodation (e.g. raised floor levels), retreat, and avoidance (e.g. not allowing subdivision or other intensification of land use in hazard areas). Even managed retreat itself does not mean immediate retreat, abandonment or relocation.

Following the December 2019 Council resolution above, an independent facilitator (Traverse Environmental Ltd) was procured with the agreement of community members, and a Port Waikato Resilience Group (PWRG) was set up including representatives from the Port Waikato Residents and Ratepayers Association, Waikato District Council, Waikato Regional Council, and Department of Conservation.

After a delay arising from the initial 2020 COVID-19 lockdown, the PWRG began meeting regularly, approving terms of reference and an intended work programme which was summarised in the Co-Design report attached to the May 2021 Council report.

The PWRG agreed to the appointment of independent advisors to assist in their work (**Table 1**), in order to ensure that all options that were considered were backed by robust technical expertise.

Table 1: External Technical Advisors supporting the PWRG

Appointment	Specialty / Experience	Role
Dr Shaw Mead Managing Director eCoast Limited	<i>Coastal processes</i>	<i>Literature review and summary of options</i>
Dr Terry Hume Principal Hume Consulting Limited	<i>Coastal processes</i>	<i>Peer review of eCoast and Nature Based Solutions work</i>
Dr Tom Shand Technical Director - Coastal Engineering Tonkin + Taylor	<i>Coastal engineering</i>	<i>Peer review of community erosion management proposal</i>
Ken Scarlett Senior Consultant Nature Based Solutions	<i>Various including integrated, nature-based perspective</i>	<i>Technical support and advocacy for community members of PWRG</i>

In addition to the external technical advisors, the project has been supported with the advice of Waikato Regional Council staff (Community Resilience, Coastal Processes and Management, Policy and Consents teams) as well as Department of Conservation and Coastcare staff.

With the support of technical advisors, the PWRG have achieved the following:

- Commissioning a report on Port Waikato coastal hazards and potential options from eCoast, and a report on groundwater issues and potential impact on erosion from Nature Based Solutions, both peer reviewed by Dr Terry Hume
- Developing a Sunset Beach Interim Erosion Response Plan (IERP) including potential low-cost, no-consent or consentable short-term options, as well as medium-term options with higher costs or consent requirements
- Agreeing to future work on a longer-term adaptive management plan (Resilience Strategy)
- Endorsing the May 2021 Co-Design Report for the project, outlining intended deliverables of the various workstreams referred to above
- Hosting representatives from the Department of Internal Affairs who summarised central government's work on natural hazard adaptation
- Addressing issues relating to carpark design, maintenance and function to minimise stormwater runoff
- Arranging for future installation of fixed-camera monitoring of beach erosion conditions from various locations
- Installation of signage advising people to keep off the eroding sand cliff
- Installation by community of netting to help retain sand on the cliff
- Trialling the transfer of 100 cubic metres (m³) of sand from the beach to the base of the cliff face adjoining the Sunset Beach carpark, to see what benefit is provided for what duration
- Obtaining quotes for larger amounts of sand transfer (e.g. 1000m³), and progressing a resource consent application for sand push ups.
- Peer review of additional proposals from the community for erosion mitigation works.

A timeline table summarising this work is attached as Attachment Two to this report.

Technical Advice Received

To date, the PWRG process has been relying on the following reports prepared by Dr Shaw Mead from eCoast:

1. An Overview of Coastal Processes and Drivers of Coastal Hazards: Port Waikato
2. Sand Management Options Investigations for Port Waikato

Both reports have been independently peer reviewed and endorsed by Dr Terry Hume. The following sections summarise key findings.

Coastal Processes Summary

Due to the predominance of south-westerly winds and waves, sediment (sand) transport is generally in a northward direction at Port Waikato.

Pulses in sediment moving up the coast from Taranaki are associated with the large fluctuations in beach levels on the Waikato Region's west coast.

At Port Waikato, there is a relatively small headland interacting with this flow of sand and allowing it to accumulate on Sunset Beach, combined with an energetic wave climate. This results in significant fluctuations in sand levels on the beach.

Recent satellite imagery indicates that up to early 2019, the coast to the south of the Port Waikato headland has also continued to erode. This suggests that there had not been an influx of sand from the south that will be moved north to nourish Sunset Beach and the spit.

Coastal processes are summarised in Figure 1 below.

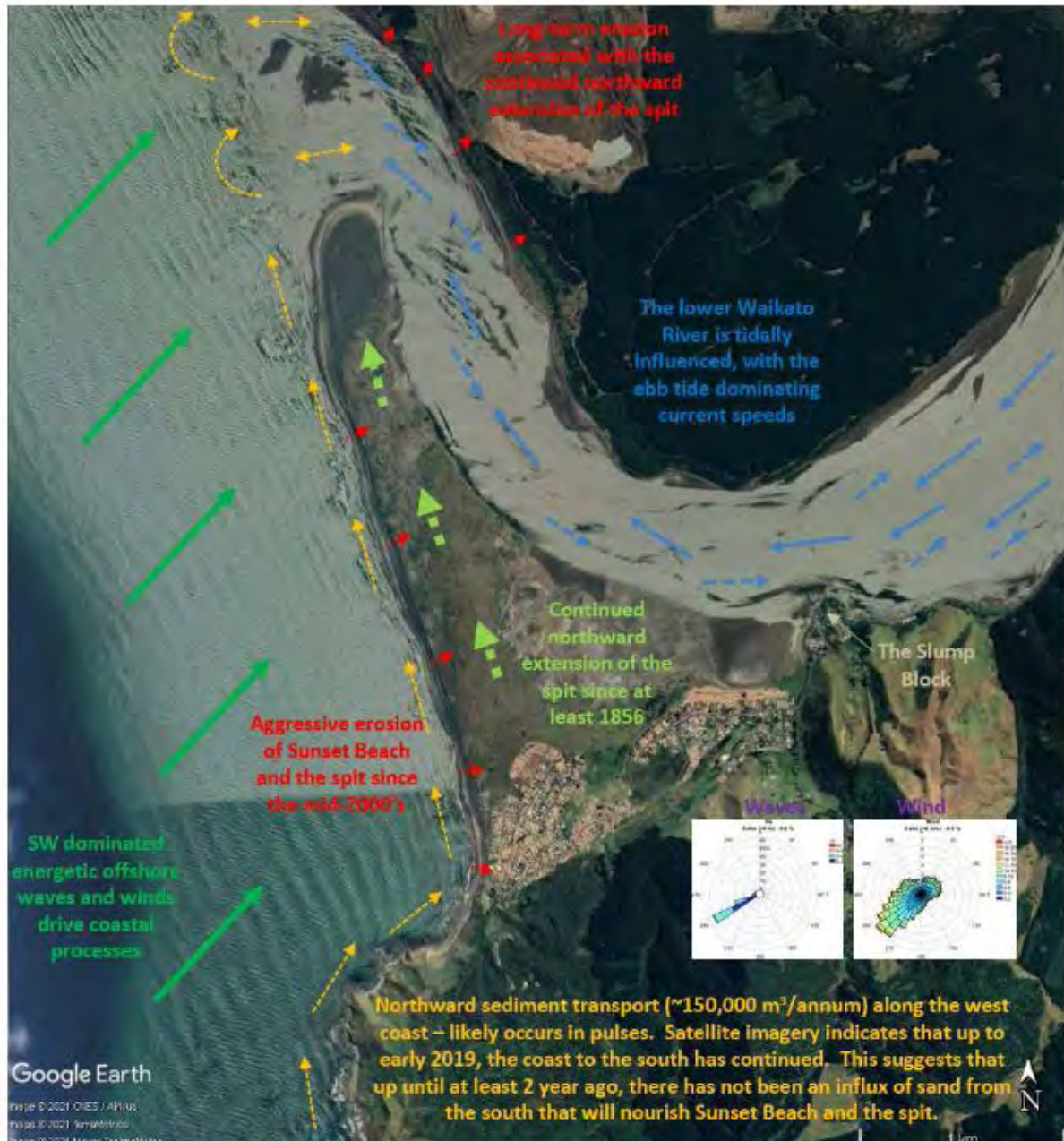


Figure 1: Coastal Processes Summary - Port Waikato

Management Options Summary

The eCoast report presents the following specific recommendations for hazard management options at Port Waikato (note these recommendations are not limited to erosion mitigation):

- Re-establishing native dune species (i.e., spinifex and pingao), once an accretionary phase begins.
- Building brush fascines to capture wind-blown sand to increase the sand reservoir and, create a wider beach/buffer; once an accretionary phase begins.
- Providing for stormwater management and relocation of stormwater infrastructure.
- Undertaking sand management in the form of transferring sand from one part of the spit to another. For example, back-passing material from inside the spit north of Sunset Beach to renourish the beach.
- Creating a raised buffer zone along the northern and eastern parts of the township to increase resilience to inundation due to SLR and CC.
- Increase beach space for coastal processes – e.g. naturalisation of the carpark to provide a wider buffer zone.

The report also presents and assesses a range of other management options. Notably, options involving the placement of a hard structure at Sunset Beach (e.g groynes, rock revetment, sea wall, breakwater etc) are not recommended by eCoast, for the following reasons:

- High visual impact and large footprint.
- Hard-structure induced foreshore and beach lowering due to reflection (rocks are far more reflective than a sloping beach) and end-effect erosion.
- Decreased beach accessibility.
- Potential health and safety concerns for beach users.
- Structure influencing nearshore coastal dynamics.
- Potential long-term loss of sandy beach.
- Very expensive at this site.

These concerns re: hard protective structures are similar to those raised by GHD in its 2014 -2016 reports for Council in relation to erosion of the carpark and the since-relocated community hall and surf lifesaving tower.

Nature Based Solutions

Further reporting prepared by Nature Based Solutions focuses on the effects of stormwater as an exacerbating influence of erosion at Sunset Beach due to top-down erosion (stormwater flowing down the dune face) and dune saturation (through groundwater influenced by stormwater).

This report has been peer reviewed, also by Dr Terry Hume, however the final report incorporating peer review comments has not been received.

Of note is Dr Hume's view, expressed through the peer review process, that there is research to suggest that saturated beaches and dunes erode more quickly and that stormwater management may assist. However, Dr Hume's view is that this may only provide a minor benefit at Port Waikato where the major issue is the supply of sand from the south.

PWRG continues to work with Watercare and WDC to mitigate any effects of stormwater on dune and beach integrity and resilience to erosion.

Summary of technical advice

Sunset Beach at Port Waikato exists in a highly dynamic and energetic coastal environment. The lack of supply of new sand into the system from the south has been identified as the primary driver of erosion.

Recommended actions to respond to these issues revolve around soft-engineering (sand nourishment, planting) and managed retreat. Hard structures are not recommended, due to the high-energy wave environment, the impact of these structures on the environment and the potential exacerbation of erosion such structures cause.

5. Discussion and analysis Taataritanga me ngaa tohutohu

Current challenges at Port Waikato

Significant erosion events have occurred episodically in association with storm events including most recently in February 2023 during Cyclone Gabrielle. These storm events, in combination with weather and tide cycles and a lack of supply of new sand into the coastal system at Port Waikato have contributed to an overall trend of erosion at Sunset Beach.

Figure 2 below was developed by a member of the PWRG to assist with understanding and communicating the impacts of erosion over the last 10 years.

The image shows the approximate edge of the dune at various time periods from 2002 to 2022 (the black lines are manual measurements taken by the PWRG member).

The PWRG member notes that in the period May 2022 to May 2023 there has been no observed erosion of the dune ridges from 11 to 31 Ocean view Road, however there has been a further approximately 6 metres of erosion losses from the beach access, the carpark and 3, 5 & 7 Oceanview Road.



Figure 2: Erosion at Sunset Beach

The ongoing erosion has continued to drive community concern, and ongoing calls for Council to take action to respond. Beach access has been lost or compromised on multiple occasions (then reinstated), and multiple houses at the southern end of Oceanview Road have already been removed or relocated on-site.

Current agreed work programme for Port Waikato Resilience Group

The PWRG continues to work on an agreed action plan that aligns with the eCoast advice. This focuses on sand push ups (to provide sacrificial sand to temporarily protect property before storm events), brush fascines (to capture wind-blown sand) and subsequent planting (to stabilise dune remnants).

In terms of the sand push-ups, Council is funding a resource consent application for up to 1000m³ at a time, to be implemented by private property owners at their cost (estimated as approximately \$30,000 per 1000m³). The Port Waikato Residents and Ratepayers Association (PWRRRA) have previously agreed to hold the resource consent once issued by Waikato Regional Council, and to seek funding to implement the pushups. The consent application is nearly complete but requires further consultation with mana whenua before lodgement. That specific consultation is pending a wider discussion between Council and mana whenua on a range of matters including the relationship itself.

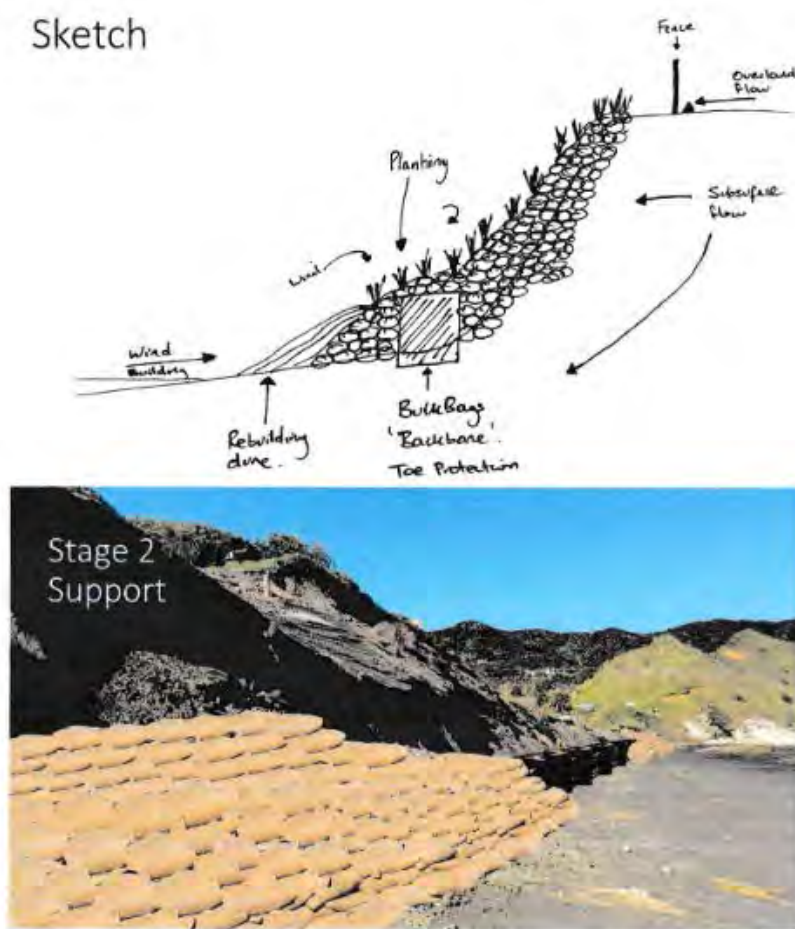
With most of the community members of the PWRG being located on Oceanview Road, and thus currently or potentially imminently impacted by coastal erosion, the community members of PWRG have understandably been largely focused on short- to medium-term options to slow erosion. This has so far made it impractical to advance to long-term adaptive management planning. With short-term options being limited, however, there is less for PWRG to discuss without moving to longer-term options. The attached scoping report for a refreshed, expanded Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning project is designed to assist with injecting momentum and clear structure and governance into the work that has been occurring with the PWRG.

Alternative proposals put forward to PWRG

Alongside the agreed formal work programme of the PWRG, other proposals have been put forward from the community and considered by the PWRG over the past two years.

Sandbags

Last year a proposal was advanced by members of the PWRG for sandbags and beach nourishment at Sunset Beach to combat erosion (Figure below).



While the proposal did not align with eCoast advice, Waikato Regional Council agreed to cover the costs of an independent technical peer review by Tonkin and Taylor to determine feasibility; however, the peer review was not favourable. Key risks were that the sandbags would fail, increase erosion (as it would effectively be a sea wall when exposed to wave action), and would be expensive to install. The proposal was not advanced further beyond peer review.

Wooden piles

The second proposal was for the installation of piles at the edge of the carpark to allow sand nourishment to occur via trucks backing up to a reinforced edge. Various sources of sand for the nourishment were investigated including clean sand from Pacific Steel.

This proposal was the subject of an unsuccessful application under the Three Waters Reform's Better Off Funding programme.

The design for the proposal has not been peer reviewed by Tonkin and Taylor, however it is likely that similar concerns would be presented in the event that the piles become exposed to wave action.

Rocks (under Emergency Works Provisions)

The third proposal and current request is for Council to place rocks at the base of the dune using the emergency provisions of s.330 of the Resource Management Act 1991.

Council staff have prepared advice for the community on how and when s.330 may be used and its limitations.

In summary, while the RMA does allow for emergency works of this kind to be done initially without a resource consent, there are specific triggers for 'emergencies' which may not be met in this situation. Additionally, it does not remove the need for resource consent entirely, which must be sought retrospectively. Whether or not the placement of rocks in this way would gain consent from WRC is unknown.

More significantly, the advice from eCoast is that a hard structure / rock revetment is not recommended for this location, given the potential for edge effects (where erosion is increased where the rock structure ends), increased erosion of the beach in front of the rocks due to wave refraction, impacts on natural character, and other considerations.

Overall, while rocks could be placed using s.330, this measure is not supported by the technical advice received by Council to date and may be challenging to retrospectively gain resource consent as a result.

These alternative proposals have taken time and resources away from the primary response agreed through the PWRG, however Council staff have sought to engage pragmatically and support with technical reviews.

It is clear that some members of the PWRG and residents on Oceanview Road are becoming increasingly concerned about ongoing erosion and are looking for solutions to be urgently deployed.

At this stage, and based on the advice from eCoast, Dr Terry Hume, Tonkin and Taylor, and Waikato Regional Council staff, while Sunset Beach is in an erosion cycle there is very little in the way of practical defensive solutions to coastal erosion at Sunset Beach that Council can support and fund.

Proposed Council response and forward planning

As summarised above, Council has previously taken a stance of managed retreat with respect to public assets at Sunset Beach. It confirmed this in a Council decision in December 2021 not to fund the protection of public and private properties at Sunset Beach – due to environmental and regulatory issues with most protection options, and ensuring the entire district does not fund the protection of property in a localised area. The wording of the December 2021 resolution was:

“Council confirms it will not directly fund any further sand transfer trials or other physical works aimed at protecting public or private property at Sunset Beach in Port Waikato.”

No new information or technical advice has been received to suggest that this Council position on managed retreat or the funding of private protection works should change.

At the same time, it must be acknowledged that community anxiety and concern are only increasing with each erosion event. Some members of the PWRG are losing patience with the process and asking Council to take urgent action to protect Sunset Beach – both public and private land.

In this context, it is important that Council communicates clearly and provides as much certainty as possible, e.g. on what it will and will not support, as well as the technical, financial, environmental, cultural and legislative rationale for the Council position.

Assuming Council’s position remains in favour of managed retreat, there is currently a lack of clear guidance and process to achieve that, leaving the community without certainty of process, timeframes etc. While the forthcoming Climate Adaptation Act (CAA) is expected to assist, this could still be some time away, and the Act may still be silent with regard to detailed implementation and funding tools for managed retreat.

Bearing these communication challenges in mind, the following is recommended:

- Public open information session(s) for the entire Port Waikato community
 - Dedicated website / page with reports, summary information etc on Port Waikato erosion and resilience
 - Direct advice and support where possible for properties potentially facing retreat / relocation
 - Policy investigations on managed retreat options (based on legislation and work in other jurisdictions) - to inform long-term adaptive management planning
-

In the meantime, it is recommended that Council:

- Does not invoke the Emergency Works provisions of the RMA (due to triggers not being met, and uncertainty re: likelihood of retrospective consent)
- Does not invest in hard protection structures (for reasons outlined in technical advice cited in this report, consistent with previous Council positions)
- Continues to work towards securing resource consent for larger-scale sand push ups (underway) – with implementation to be funded privately or via targeted rate
- Continues to promote wind-blown sand trapping and subsequent planting for dune stabilisation

At the same time, it is recommended that Council continue to develop a long-term resilience strategy (adaptive management plan) for Port Waikato – as part of a wider District programme – as per the Scoping Report attached as Attachment One. A refreshed, expanded Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning project is designed to assist with injecting momentum and clear structure and governance into the work that has been occurring with the PWRG.

5.1 Options

Ngaa koowhiringa

Staff have assessed that there are multiple options for the Committee to consider with regard to the recommendations of this report. This assessment reflects the level of significance (see paragraph 6.1) and the fact that some of the recommendations can be grouped together as a package.

With regard to recommendation (a), to provide ongoing advice to the Port Waikato community on coastal processes and short/medium term actions to slow erosion, staff assume this is not controversial. The alternative ‘do-nothing’ option of not providing advice would undermine community goodwill with the community and miss opportunities to pass on information as staff become aware of latest guidance, trends, etc.

With regard to recommendation (b), confirming Council’s position of managed retreat with respect to public assets at Sunset Beach, there are essentially two options: to confirm the position or to resile from it, which would indicate that the Council is promoting defensive measures as its primary strategy for the carpark, community hub and other public assets at Sunset Beach. The advantages of the recommended confirmation of existing position (managed retreat) are that it is consistent with extensive technical advice, government and regional guidance, and Council’s previous decisions. It is likely to be more cost-effective than the alternative of defensive measures, and can be done in a proactive way before public facilities are more significantly threatened. Managed retreat allows for short-term, nature-based protection measures such as wind-blown sand capture and replanting, but recognises that ultimately these measures are only potentially slowing erosion and at best delaying relocation. The alternative of defensive action as a primary strategy is, according to peer reviewed technical advice, not likely to be sustainable over time. In the dynamic coastal environment of Sunset Beach, the protective measures necessary to make a meaningful difference to erosion long-term are likely to face considerable challenges in relation to effectiveness, affordability, environmental and cultural considerations, and consentability. Defensive action may be initially perceived

favourably by immediately affected property owners, but if there are 'end effects', other environmental impacts including lowering of the beach, or cost implications for ratepayers across Port Waikato and beyond, this favourable perception may not extend widely. The favourable perception may also fade for coastal property owners as any protection structures inevitably fail and require costly maintenance.

With regard to recommendation (c), accepting the independent expert and peer reviewed advice Council has received to date that the installation of hard structures of any kind to prevent or slow coastal erosion at Sunset Beach is not appropriate and may exacerbate erosion effects, there is nothing to indicate that there is a significant difference of opinion among coastal hazard and coastal engineering experts. To choose an alternative option, e.g. rejecting expert, peer-reviewed advice received to date, would either require a decision to be made in the absence of expert advice, or finding an expert who supports the installation of hard structures at Sunset Beach. While hard structures have been consented and successfully deployed in places such as South Dunedin, advice from the experts behind those projects have cautioned against their transferability to the dynamic West Coast environment.

Recommendation (d), confirming that Council will not directly fund any further sand transfer trials or other physical works aimed at protecting public or private property at Sunset Beach in Port Waikato, in the absence of a targeted rate to fund such works, this is essentially the same as the previous Council resolution from December 2021 quoted earlier in this report. The main difference is that it adds the phrase 'in the absence of a targeted rate to fund such works.' This allows for the possibility of Council supporting some physical works as long as the funding mechanism was suitable to target the beneficiaries of said works. While it may initially seem contrary to recommendation (c) which says Council will not fund hard protection structures, it is consistent if the physical works are 'soft solutions' such as sand push-ups, wind-blown sand capture, plantings, etc. An alternative option is for Council to agree to fund physical works from the general rates, but the disadvantage is that this would make the entire district pay for localised works which would primarily benefit a small number of private property owners, or (in the case of public assets) a relatively small part of the community.

With regard to recommendation (e), not invoking the RMA's emergency works powers or transferring these to another entity, this is supported by legal advice relating to the triggers for such powers. The project for which the community has requested the use of these powers (i.e. a rock wall) is also likely to face significant hurdles for the retrospective resource consent required from the Waikato Regional Council, because of the likely environmental impacts resulting. The alternative option of involving the emergency works powers would raise legal and financial risks around the potential outcome of the WRC failing to issue retrospective consent and requiring removal of any emergency works.

With regard to recommendation (f), investigating opportunities to better enable and support managed retreat for private properties affected by erosion at Sunset Beach in Port Waikato, this is a low-cost option based on research and discussion with local, regional and central government colleagues (and potentially the insurance industry).

There is no obvious reason why an alternative option of not doing this investigation would be chosen, unless Council wished to distance itself from the concept of managed retreat altogether. Even if it did, government direction is likely to continue to steer local government towards consideration of managed retreat in areas such as Sunset Beach, and it would be remiss of Council to not proactively explore what local options might exist for the Port Waikato community.

With regard to recommendation (g), continuing work towards a long-term adaptive management plan for the wider Port Waikato community, and for other communities such as Raglan, via a broader and more robust Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, this is the recommendation of the attached Scoping Report and is supported by Waikato Regional Council and Waikato District Council staff. It recognises the need for a long-term focus for communities such as Port Waikato, and that other communities such as Raglan also need this attention. The alternative of focusing only on the short- and medium-term might have the advantage of waiting for the Climate Adaptation Act to be released, but as this legislation has been delayed repeatedly, it is possible that communities could be waiting a while longer, or the Act may not contain the required detail to outline a clear way forward. In any case, altering this recommendation to pause until the Climate Adaptation Act is released would be more advisable than resiling from long-term adaptive management planning on a permanent basis. The other alternative of maintaining a sole focus on Port Waikato (and not beginning to work with Raglan or other communities facing natural hazards) might initially seem beneficial for Port Waikato, but it would likely miss the opportunities of greater learning through parallel work in different communities, and it would also be hard to justify why communities such as Raglan would remain on the 'back burner.'

With regard to the final recommendation (h), agreeing to formally invite the Waikato Regional Council to form a Joint Committee (or Joint Working Party) for the Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Project, and to facilitate the formation of a Community Panel(s) and/or Community Reference Group(s), this is the recommendation of the attached Scoping Report. There are pros and cons in the Scoping Report for the governance options reflected in the recommendation, but initially this recommendation is worded flexibly above to allow for discussion at the political level between Waikato District Council and Waikato Regional Council. The reason for this recommendation in general is to strengthen the governance and project structure, with the district and regional councils side-by-side, reflecting their shared responsibilities around hazard management and community wellbeing.

5.2 Financial considerations

Whaiwhakaaro puutea

There are no material financial considerations associated with the recommendations of this report. Funding for the adaptive management planning activity is included in the 2021-2031 Long Term Plan and will be revisited for the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

If Council did wish to fund physical works, contrary to the recommendations of this report, there would be financial implications. A targeted rate could be considered for any 'soft solutions' but this has administrative as well as financial implications that would need to be considered.

5.3 Legal considerations **Whaiwhakaaro-aa-ture**

Staff confirm that staff recommendations comply with the Council's legal and policy requirements. Legal advice has been sought and received with regard to the use of the Section 330 emergency works powers of the Resource Management Act 1991. The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement also provides legislative backing for the general positioning of this report.

5.4 Strategy and policy considerations **Whaiwhakaaro whakamaaherehere kaupapa here**

The report and recommendations are consistent with the Council's policies, plans and prior decisions. The Council's Climate Response and Resilience Policy, and Climate Action Plan, are key among these, as is the Council's District Plan which seeks to avoid development in hazard-prone areas.

5.5 Maaori and cultural considerations **Whaiwhakaaro Maaori me oona tikanga**

Relevant mana whenua in the Port Waikato area (Te Puaha o Waikato) have been part of the Port Waikato Resilience Group, through Nga Uri o Ngaati Tahinga as the mandated iwi authority for the wider area, with six marae as part of that collective. There have also been discussions with Ngaati Karewa, Ngaati Tahinga Trust (with authority over a significant subset of land at Port Waikato including the campground). Discussions are still in progress regarding particular aspects of the PWRG's work such as the proposed sand push-up resource consent application. A wider discussion around the Council's relationship with mana whenua, and integration of discussions around various Council projects in the Port Waikato area, is occurring.

5.6 Climate response and resilience considerations **Whaiwhakaaro-aa-taiao**

The decisions sought by, and matters covered in, this report are consistent with the Council's [Climate Response and Resilience Policy](#) and [Climate Action Plan](#). Coastal erosion at Sunset Beach is cyclical, but sea level rise and greater storm intensity is exacerbating the erosion. Climate change is also creating issues at Raglan and other communities to which the Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning project is planned to extend.

5.7 Risks Tuuraru

There are considerable risks involved in both action and inaction with regard to coastal erosion and other natural hazards.

Council's Strategic Risk Register includes the following:

Climate Resilience: Council experiences significant public scrutiny and or financial impact caused by Council being unable to effectively support Communities to adapt to climate impacts.

Council's Risk Register also includes operational risks around damages to public infrastructure arising from climate change, and community impacts from storm surge at coastal and river locations.

These risks have political, financial, legal, environmental and cultural dimensions. Risks have been considered with respect to all the recommendations of this report, and referenced where appropriate in the Options analysis.

The recommendations of this report are considered to be in keeping with the Council's risk framework.

6. Significance and engagement assessment Aromatawai paahekoheko

6.1 Significance Te Hiranga

The decisions and matters of this report are assessed as of moderate significance, in accordance with the Council's [Significance and Engagement Policy](#).

The following criteria are particularly relevant in determining the level of significance for this matter:

- The likely impact on present and future interests of the community, recognising Maaori Tikanga (culture values) and their relationship to land and water. The project work that is the subject of this report and the recommended decisions have long-term consequences for all sectors of the community including mana whenua, and the recommendation is to expand this work beyond Port Waikato.
 - The community interest is likely to be high, at least in the Port Waikato area, given the prominence of Sunset Beach and its erosion issues for that community.
 - The likely consequences are controversial; there will be some members of the Port Waikato community who will be disappointed if Council accepts the recommendations of this report and does not invoke emergency works, support hard protection structures, and/or resile from its previous stance of managed retreat for public assets, and there will be other community members disappointed if Council takes the opposite positions.
-

6.2 Engagement

Te Whakatuutakitaki

Considerable engagement has occurred with the Port Waikato community on coastal erosion issues over the past decade. The work by GHD involved community consultation on options for relocation of the Sunset Beach carpark and community hall. Since 2020, the Port Waikato Resilience Group has provided an opportunity for collaboration between community members, Councils, Department of Conservation, mana whenua, etc. Public meetings and external communications have kept the wider community informed. Council also helped Port Waikato develop its Local Area Blueprint in 2022.

The goal is for the recommendations of the attached Scoping Report to be adopted, which will trigger further engagement at the various levels below, including (hopefully) empowerment, as the community is able to shape its own destiny with regard to natural hazards.

Highest level of engagement	Inform	Consult	Involve	Collaborate	Empower
	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<i>Tick the appropriate box/boxes and specify what it involves by providing a brief explanation of the tools which will be used to engage (refer to the project engagement plan if applicable).</i>	For the purpose of this report, 'collaboration' is the level that best reflects the work to date. This does not indicate that all PWRG or community members are supportive of the recommendations in this report, but they have been involved in most of the work referenced in the report, and have collaborated on most of the achievements highlighted.				

State below which external stakeholders have been or will be engaged with:

Planned	In Progress	Complete	
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Internal
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Community Boards/Community Committees
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Waikato-Tainui/Local iwi and hapuu
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Affected Communities
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Affected Businesses [
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Other (Please Specify): Regional Council, Department of Conservation

7. Next steps Ahu whakamua

If the recommendations are approved, the appropriate actions will be taken to advance each of them. This will include direct communication with the Port Waikato Resilience Group, and external communications to the wider community via the Council website, media release, etc. Conversations will occur with Waikato Regional Council elected members with regard to the recommended governance options.

8. Confirmation of statutory compliance Te Whakatuuturutanga aa-ture

As required by the Local Government Act 2002, staff confirm the following:

The report fits with Council's role and Committee's Terms of Reference and Delegations.	Confirmed
The report contains sufficient information about all reasonably practicable options identified and assessed in terms of their advantages and disadvantages (<i>Section 5.1</i>).	Confirmed
Staff assessment of the level of significance of the issues in the report after consideration of the Council's Significance and Engagement Policy (<i>Section 6.1</i>).	Moderate
The report contains adequate consideration of the views and preferences of affected and interested persons taking account of any proposed or previous community engagement and assessed level of significance (<i>Section 6.2</i>).	Confirmed
The report considers impact on Maaori (<i>Section 5.5</i>)	Confirmed
The report and recommendations are consistent with Council's plans and policies (<i>Section 5.4</i>).	Confirmed, particularly Climate Action Plan
The report and recommendations comply with Council's legal duties and responsibilities (<i>Section 5.3</i>).	Confirmed

9. Attachments Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1 – Scoping Report for Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning

Attachment 2 – Summary timeline of Port Waikato Resilience Group activities

WAIKATO DISTRICT COUNCIL
WAIKATO DISTRICT
ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT PLANNING

SCOPING REPORT
20 JUNE 2023



TABLE OF CONTENTS

1	INTRODUCTION	6
1.1	Report Purpose	6
1.2	Planning Horizon	6
2	SUMMARY OF RECOMMENDATIONS	7
2.1	Priority Communities & Project Phasing	7
2.2	Project Governance	7
2.2.1	Iwi / hapū engagement	7
2.2.2	Joint Committee	7
2.2.3	Technical Advisory Group	8
2.2.1	Decision making	8
2.3	Community Engagement	8
2.3.1	Avoiding consultation fatigue	8
2.3.2	Chair of Community Panel or Community Reference Group	8
2.3.3	Honorarium	9
2.3.4	Technical advice for community engagement	9
2.3.5	Peer to peer engagement	9
3	CONTEXT	10
3.1	Project Background	10
3.2	Definitions	10
3.3	Waikato Regional Resilience Programme	10
3.4	Project Area – Waikato District	11
3.5	Predicted effects of climate change	13
3.6	Hazards in scope	13
4	HAZARD INFORMATION GAP ANALYSIS	14
4.1	Gap Analysis Methodology	14
4.2	Summary of hazard information	14
4.2.1	River flooding models	16
4.2.2	Information for natural hazards ‘out of scope’	17
5	PLANNING FOR NATURAL HAZARDS AND CLIMATE CHANGE	18
5.1	Planning under uncertainty	18
5.2	Legislative Context	18
5.2.1	New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement	18
5.2.2	National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management and National Environmental Standards for Freshwater	19

5.2.3	National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022	19
5.2.4	Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941	20
5.3	RMA Reform + Climate Adaptation Act (CAA)	22
5.3.2	Climate Adaptation Act (“CAA”)	22
5.3.3	Affordable Water Government Reform	24
6	DYNAMIC ADAPTIVE PLANNING PATHWAYS (DAPP)	25
6.1	Roles and Responsibilities of Local Government	26
7	CASE STUDIES	28
7.1	Wharekawa Coast 2120	28
7.1.1	Potential process refinements	30
7.2	Port Waikato Resilience Strategy	33
7.3	Clifton to Tangoio Coastal Hazards Strategy	34
7.4	Thames Coromandel District Council	35
7.5	International and academic guidance	36
7.5.1	Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 6th Assessment Report	36
7.5.2	Deep South National Science Challenge	37
7.5.3	Resilience to Nature’s Challenges National Science Challenge	37
7.5.4	NZ SeaRise: Te Tai Pari O Aotearoa	37
8	PROPOSED WAIKATO DISTRICT ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT PLANNING APPROACH	38
8.1	Considerations to inform DAPP in the Waikato District	38
8.2	District-wide Programme	40
8.2.1	Priority communities	40
8.2.2	Regional prioritisation	40
8.3	Programme Governance	41
8.3.1	Iwi / hapū partnership	41
8.3.2	Governance structure options	41
8.3.3	Recommended Governance Structure	43
8.3.4	Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Joint Committee	43
8.4	Technical Advisory Group	44
8.5	Community Engagement	45
8.5.1	Option A: Community Panel	45
8.5.2	Option B: Community reference groups	46
8.6	Recommended Adaptive Management Planning Project Structure	47
8.6.1	Proposed project process	48
9	NEXT STEPS	50

List of Figures

Figure 1: Extent of the Waikato District (shown as the Wards of the Waikato District Council)	12
Figure 2 Highly Productive Land in the Waikato District (Source Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research)	20
Figure 3 River Management Zones in the Waikato District (Source Waikato Regional Council)	21
Figure 4 Relationship of new Acts replacing the RMA.	23
Figure 5 Comparison between the existing and future system.....	23
Figure 6 Timeline of RM Reform.....	24
Figure 7 - 10-step decision framework. Source: Ministry for the Environment, Coastal Hazards and Climate Change Guidance for Local Government 2017 – Adapted from Max Oulton (University of Waikato) and UN-Habitat (2014).....	26
<i>Figure 8 Wharekawa Coast 2120 Project Structure</i>	28
<i>Figure 9 Wharekawa Coast Community Panel Workshop Schedule Outline</i>	29
<i>Figure 10 Development process for the Port Waikato Resilience project</i>	33
Figure 11 Generational experiences of Climate Change (Source IPCC 6th Assessment)	36
<i>Figure 12 Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Planning Project Structure</i>	48

List of Tables

Table 1: Gap Analysis - Hazards in Scope in the Waikato District.....	15
Table 2 Gap Analysis – Hazards out of scope.....	17
<i>Table 3 Proposed governance options for Waikato District</i>	42
Table 4 Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Process (TAG – Technical Advisory Group; Comm – Community panel or community reference group; JC – Joint Committee).....	49

Report Information

Current report status	20 June 2023 – Final
	15 June 2023 Draft V3 – Incorporating WDC/ WRC comments
	14 June 2023 Draft V2 – For review by WDC/ WRC
	8 June 2023 Draft V1 – For initial review by WDC/ WRC
Author	Waverley Jones, Senior Environmental Consultant Simon Bendall, Director
Reviewed By	Deborah Kissick, Senior Environmental Planner

© Traverse Environmental Limited (2023).

This document and its contents are the property of Traverse Environmental Limited. Any unauthorised employment or reproduction, in full or in part, is forbidden.

1 Introduction

1.1 Report Purpose

The purpose of this report is to assist the Waikato District Council (“WDC”) and Waikato Regional Council’s (“WRC”) (“the Partner Councils”) to design the approach for long term adaptive planning for natural hazards using the Dynamic Adaptive Pathway Planning (“DAPP”) methodology in the Waikato District. This approach will be called ‘adaptive management planning’ throughout this report.

This report will:

- Look strategically at natural hazard risks across the Waikato District;
- Define the aim and objectives of adaptive management planning in the Waikato District;
- Identify the scope, limitations and roles and responsibilities of key contributors; and
- Develop a methodology and recommendations for implementing DAPP in the Waikato District.

We would like to acknowledge Hauraki District Council (“HDC”) who, together with WRC, are also looking to progress long-term adaptive management planning for natural hazards in the wider Hauraki District using the DAPP approach. We have prepared a similar scoping report to assist HDC. We have aligned our advice for both WDC and HDC (in their scoping reports) where useful for consistency and cost efficiency across the Waikato Region.

1.2 Planning Horizon

A requirement to consider a 100-year planning horizon is established under the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (“NZCPS”) (Policies 24, 25 and 27). Adaptive management planning in the Waikato District should seek to reflect this requirement.

2 Summary of Recommendations

The following summarises our recommendations discussed throughout sections 7 and 8 of this report.

2.1 Priority Communities & Project Phasing

Given the scale of the Waikato District and the range of communities present, we recommend that adaptive management planning is not undertaken as a single project / community. We recommend priority communities are identified and a staged approach to adaptive management planning is undertaken. It is recommended that **Port Waikato** and **Raglan** are both prioritised for long-term adaptive planning and that the Council consider running these processes concurrently.

This is based on existing natural hazards being experienced by these communities, and the high level of vulnerability to both short term and long-term climate-related natural hazards. There was also strong feedback from WDC Councillors that these communities should be prioritised.

Aligning the projects has resource implications but provides an economy of scale and overall cost effectiveness for both the communities and Council. Although the community outcomes will differ, much of the mechanics of the DAPP approach will be the same for both Raglan and Port Waikato

2.2 Project Governance

2.2.1 Iwi / hapū engagement

We recommend early and targeted discussion occur with iwi / hapū to determine and co-design an approach for identifying values to inform and guide decision-making for adaptive management planning efforts for the Waikato District.

2.2.2 Joint Committee

We recommend WDC / WRC create a **Joint Committee** to provide project governance. We recommend this Committee have tangata whenua representatives from Raglan and Port Waikato in the first instance. As a formal committee established under clause 30 Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002, the Joint Committee will:

- Provide gravitas and recognise the critical nature of the climate-related hazards and then need for long-term planning;
- Ensure Iwi / hapū are involved in the governance of the programme, and that mana whenua are represented.
- Provide transparency due to all meeting material and decisions being publicly available.

2.2.3 Technical Advisory Group

We recommend the establishment of a technical advisory group (“TAG”) to support the Waikato District adaptive management planning programme. The TAG can provide technical advice and guidance, including through independent technical experts as required, to both the Joint Committee and the community panel or reference group.

2.2.1 Decision making

The Partner Councils are the ultimate decision makers when it comes to implementing the outcomes of the adaptive management planning work. The Joint Committee would be responsible for reporting their findings/ outcomes and making recommendations to the Partner Councils for decisions to be made.

2.3 Community Engagement

We recommend exploring two options for community engagement – a Community Panel or Community Reference Group (CRG). Each option has a varying level of community engagement and volunteer commitment, as well as administrative support requirements.

Further discussion with WDC/WRC Councillors is required on this recommendation and the decision could be made by Councillors or by the Joint Committee.

2.3.1 Avoiding consultation fatigue

Once the community engagement method is chosen, we recommend developing an efficient process to avoid consultation fatigue and use the community’s time efficiently. In recognition of this, it is recommended that adaptive management planning for the Waikato District look for opportunities to align with existing consultation programmes and structures to ensure efficient use of the community’s time and energy.

2.3.2 Chair of Community Panel or Community Reference Group

We recommend the appointment of a Councillor to the role of chair, regardless of whether a Community Panel or CRG is chosen. As an elected representative, they are still fundamentally a community advocate and member, but can also be fairly remunerated for their time and have familiarity with council process and meeting procedures.

This would allow the community members to be involved in the process equally and without additional demands on their time or separation of role and would mean that the more administrative requirements of the chair, including management of meetings and keeping to the agenda timing, could be left to the appointed councillor.

2.3.3 Honorarium

We recommend community members are offered an honorarium for their time on either the Community Panel or CRG. We consider that this adds formality to the process, recognises the time being put in by Community Panel or CRG members, offsets costs (e.g., travel) for participation, and in our view can help to hold a process like this together with consistent membership through to conclusion. We recommend checking if WRC or WDC have an existing policy around paying honorarium.

Further discussion with WDC and WRC is required on this recommendation.

2.3.4 Technical advice for community engagement

We recommended that the core technical information required for the project is identified and developed ahead of the intensive community engagement process commencing. Summaries for community engagement purposes can then be prepared and made available. Core technical reports can then be considered, understood, amended if need be and then confirmed as baseline information as part of the early phase of community engagement.

2.3.5 Peer to peer engagement

We recommend encouraging and supporting peer-to-peer engagement like what was achieved in the Wharekawa Coast and Hawke's Bay projects. We found this valuable in increasing community buy-in to the project and its outcomes, through the Panel engaging directly with their community on various parts of the project.

3 Context

3.1 Project Background

The Partner Councils agreed to develop a Scoping Report in 2022 that looks strategically at natural hazard risks and adaptive management planning for the Waikato District, using the DAPP methodology. The overall aim of this project is to build resilience to hazards and climate change and enable the development of a programme of adaptive management planning projects across the Waikato District in a strategic manner.

3.2 Definitions

This report will use definitions identified in the WDC Climate Response and Resilience Policy 2020. Of note is the definition of **resilience**:

“An ability by the climate, community, built and natural environments to recover setbacks; an ability which is enhanced by actions and strategies that change processes, practices and structures to prevent, reduce, and/or mitigate climate change severity and effects; and that increase preparedness for any unavoidable impacts.”

This report will use the definition of **Dynamic Adaptive Pathways Planning** as defined Ministry for the Environment¹ who have used the Haasnoot et al (2013)² definition. DAPP is defined as:

“[a] plan is conceptualized as a series of actions over time (pathways), including initial actions and long-term options. The essence is the proactive planning for flexible adaptation over time, in response to how the future actually unfolds.”

3.3 Waikato Regional Resilience Programme

The Waikato Regional Resilience Programme (“WRRP”), initiated by Waikato Regional Council, is a programme which will take a holistic approach to increasing community resilience to projected climate change effects across the Waikato region. The WRRP will be implemented through a range of new standalone projects, enhancing existing projects and through collaborative partnerships with external agencies. The programme identifies multi-year or one-off projects, targeted at engaging territorial authorities, communities, iwi / hapū, and stakeholders, to increase the Waikato region’s resilience to climate change and understand the impacts to existing and future communities, which this project aligns with.

The WDC Adaptive management planning projects will be supported by the WRRP through access to WRC technical expertise, data and staff time.

¹ <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/coastal-hazards-and-climate-change-guidance-for-local-government/>

² Haasnoot, M., Kwakkel, J. H., Walker, W. E., & ter Maat, J. (2013). Dynamic adaptive policy pathways: A method for crafting robust decisions for a deeply uncertain world. *Global Environmental Change*, 23(2), 485–498

3.4 Project Area – Waikato District

The Waikato District is made up of mainly small settlements surrounded by rural land which is used for a variety of productive and conservation purposes. The wider district has been divided into 10 wards for local governance purposes as illustrated in **Figure 1** below. The Waikato and Waipā Rivers are significant rivers which strongly contribute to the district's character.

The Waikato District's western boundary is the coastline with the Tasman Sea extending to the North of Port Waikato, where the Waikato River enters the sea and south of Raglan. The Waikato District is experiencing high levels of population growth. The population of 81,473 (2020) is expected to swell by more than 14,000 in the next decade and rise to between 128,500 and 149,500 by 2060. There is also planned growth in Raglan and Te Kauwhata.³

³ Waikato District Council Longterm Plan 2021 – 2031

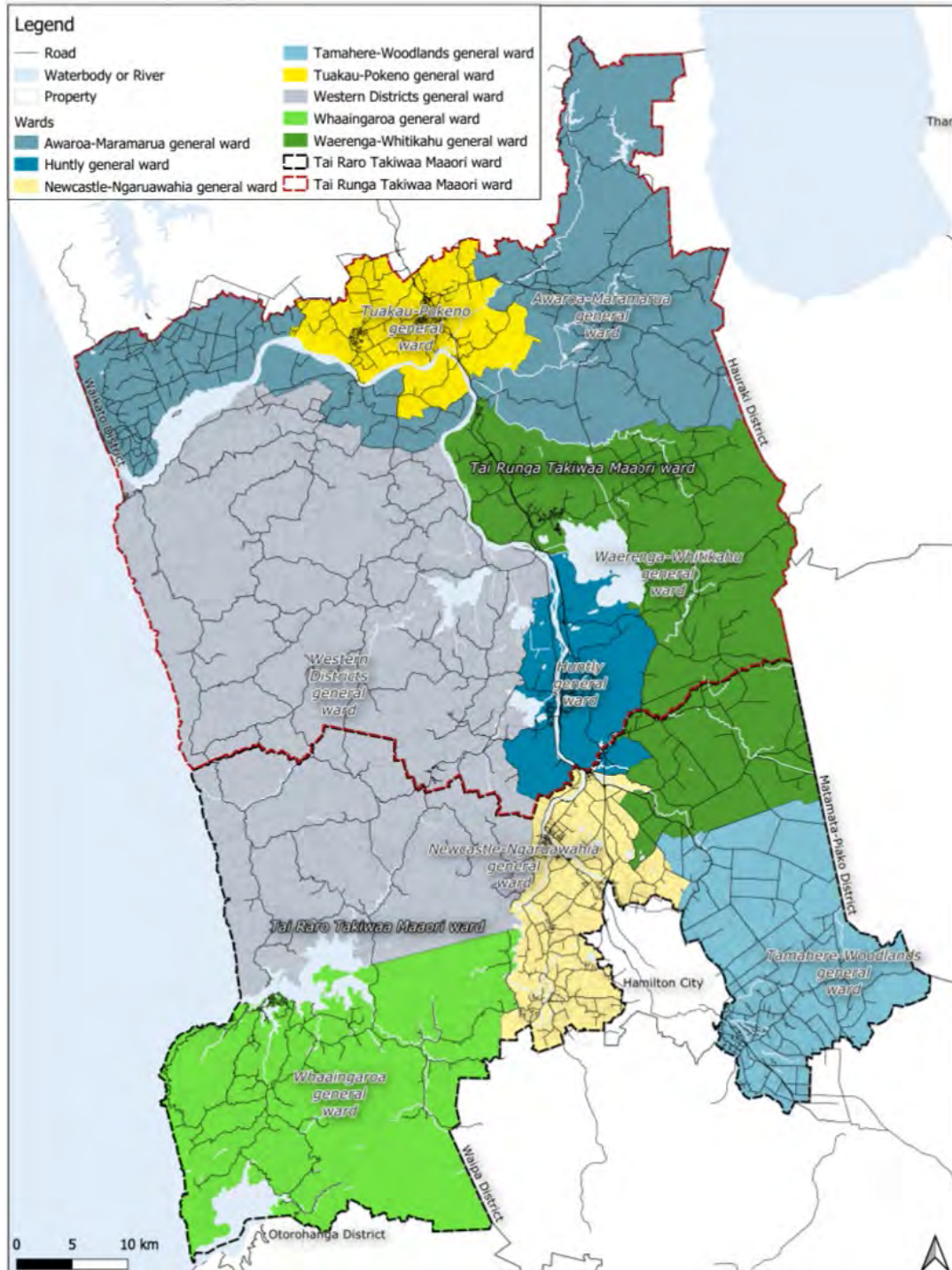


Figure 1: Extent of the Waikato District (shown as the Wards of the Waikato District Council)

3.5 Predicted effects of climate change

The Waikato District is susceptible to a range of natural hazards, some of which will be exacerbated by climate change. Predicted effects of climate change on the Waikato District include overall warmer temperatures, fewer frosts, a decrease in spring rainfall, increased storm events and an average rise in mean sea level. This is likely to mean:

- more frequent droughts leading to water shortages,
- more inland flooding and saltwater intrusion in low-lying coastal areas, and
- an increase in erosion and land instability.

The more frequent natural hazards in the district such as river flooding, flood ponding, coastal inundation and erosion and land instability (land slips and subsidence) have previously been addressed through a regulatory framework. This framework focusses on reducing risk by avoiding, remedying or mitigating the effects of natural hazards to ensure that damage to property or injury or loss of lives is minimised. The recent review of the natural hazards provisions as part of the Proposed Waikato District Plan (decision released January 2022) focussed on developing a risk-based framework to manage natural hazard risk in line with the policy direction in the Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016 ("WRPS") as well as the NZCPS⁴. **Appendix One** outlines the range of hazards experienced in the Waikato District.

3.6 Hazards in scope

Council staff have confirmed that the following hazards are **within scope** for the Waikato District adaptive management planning project:

- Coastal inundation
- Coastal erosion
- Groundwater intrusion
- River flooding
- Landslip/ slope stability

Council staff have also confirmed that the following natural hazards are **out of scope** for the current project. However, it is noted that these natural hazards will not be completely excluded, and a strategic approach to their management may be needed in the future.

- Earthquake
- Drought
- Wildfire
- Tsunami
- Liquefaction

⁴ Proposed Waikato District Plan – Stage 2 - Natural Hazards and Climate Change Section 32 Report 2020

4 Hazard Information Gap Analysis

In scoping this report and any future approach for long term adaptive planning for natural hazards, it is important to consider the current level of natural hazards information held by WDC and WRC, and what further work would be required to utilise this current information for the development of long-term adaptive planning.

4.1 Gap Analysis Methodology

For this gap analysis, we have defined three levels of natural hazards information:

- Level 0: No information available on hazard
- Level 1: High level information sufficient to enable long-term planning for coastal assets and future growth.
- Level 2: Detailed and robust information suitable to support regulatory processes (District Plan review, Regional Plan / Regional Policy Statement review) and design of options. This level of information is not for property-specific purposes, but can be used at a 'zone' level if required with regards to regulatory planning.

Using this approach, a summary of the available hazard information held by WDC and WRC has been developed utilising information available to the end of May 2023. Information has been sourced from WRC/ WDC Council reports, the Waikato Regional Hazards Portal⁵ and through communication with the WRC Resilience team.

4.2 Summary of hazard information

Table 1 provides an overview of the level of detail held by WRC on specific hazards in the Waikato District as of May 2023. The information below has been collected at a regional level. Location-specific information and gap analysis will need to be developed once the priority communities have been selected.

⁵ <https://www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/services/regional-hazards-and-emergency-management/regional-hazards-portal/>

Table 1: Gap Analysis - Hazards in Scope in the Waikato District

Natural Hazard	Level 1 Hazard Information	Comments	Level 2 Hazard Information	Comments	Current Level of information
Coastal Inundation	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Modelling available at a regional level - Coastal inundation tool⁶ 	✗	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Requires further data analysis. - Requires external consultants 	1
Coastal erosion	✓/✗	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Historical shoreline erosion available from WRC at a regional level - Future climate change erosion - Requires data analysis. - Can be completed inhouse by WRC or via a consultant 	✗	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Future climate change erosion - Requires data analysis. - Can be completed in-house by WRC or via a consultant. 	1
Groundwater	✗	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Requires data analysis/need to check with internal groundwater scientists. - Can be completed in-house by WRC or via a consultant. 	✗	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Requires data analysis. - Can be completed in-house by WRC or via a consultant. - Is likely to be primarily in relation to and exacerbated due to sea level rise and river flooding 	0
River flooding	✓	<p>Different flood models available across the district:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 2d climate model from Horotiu to Rangiriri at a property to local scale - 1d Mangawara and Low Waikato River models (used for Performance Assessment of WRC stopbanks) including climate change at a regional level. - Extrapolated 2d 1% AEP flood extent along the whole Waipa and Waikato River at a local to regional scale - Currently being developed in house: - 2d models for Mangatāwhiri (eta Early 2024) and Lake Waikare and Whangamarino wetland (eta due mid 2024) both including climate change at a local to regional scale 	✓	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 2d Climate Change RCP Horotiu through to Rangiriri (has been used for District Plan review) at a property to local scale for some parts of the district. - Extrapolated 2d 1% AEP flood extent along the whole Waipa and Waikato River with limitations (is currently in the Waikato District Plan at a local to regional scale <p>Currently being developed in house:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 2d models for Mangatāwhiri (Early 2024) and Lake Waikare and Whangamarino wetland (due mid 2024) both including CC at a local to regional scale. <p>Requires further analysis:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - 1d to 2d extrapolation – can be done inhouse at a local to regional scale - River flooding inundation tool at a regional level 	2

⁶<https://www.waikatoregion.govt.nz/services/regional-hazards-and-emergency-management/coastal-flooding-inundation/coastal-inundation-tool/>

Natural Hazard	Level 1 Hazard Information	Comments	Level 2 Hazard Information	Comments	Current Level of information
Landslip/slope Stability – need further information from WRC	X	Required for constraint mapping to identify new development areas. Can be done inhouse or by consultant	X	- Useful for constraint mapping for re-zoning through District Plan - Level of additional information required not clear at this stage	0

4.2.1 River flooding models

WRC currently has a range of river flooding models that have different levels of robustness. WRC are currently working with external agencies around additional modelling in the Lower Waikato.

The following bullet points outline further information on WRC's river flood modelling:

- The 2d climate change representative concentration pathway (RCP) modelling developed from Horotiu through to Rangiriri is the best level information WRC currently hold along the Waikato River and was developed for the Waikato District Plan review. WRC is currently developing a 2d model for the Mangatāwhiri and Lake Waikare and Whangamarino wetland catchments to conduct a performance assessment of WRC stopbanks.
- 1d Mangawara and Lower Waikato models only provide an indicated flood level throughout the watercourse and therefore do not provide an indication of the flood extent. This information can be used for resource consent applications where the application is in the floodplain or near the stopbanks. However, the robustness of this information reduces the further away from the river.
- Extrapolated 2d model extent from 1d model can provide an indication to where the flood extent is likely to be based on the 1d flood level. However, there are limitations with this approach as this modelling does not include velocity and is an extrapolation.

4.2.2 Information for natural hazards 'out of scope'

Table 2 provides a summary of the current information available (May 2023) relating to the natural hazards identified as being outside the scope of this project.

Table 2 Gap Analysis – Hazards out of scope

Natural Hazard	Level 1 Hazard Information	Comments	Level 2 Hazard Information	Comments	Current Level of information
Earthquake	x	- Requires data analysis. - Can be completed inhouse by WRC or via a consultant	x	- Requires data analysis. - Can be completed inhouse by WRC or via a consultant	0
Drought	x	- Requires discussion around application of hazard and what information could be available. -	x	- Requires discussion around application of hazard and what information could be available. -	0
Wildfire	x	- Requires discussion around application of hazard and what information could be available. -	x	- Requires discussion around application of hazard and what information could be available. -	0
Tsunami	✓	Available now (2)	✓	- Available now (2)	2
Liquefaction	✓	- Level 1 Liquefaction assessment available in house (3)	x	- Requires further data analysis. - Level 2 assessment currently underway for district in support of local area shared service.	1

5 Planning for Natural Hazards and Climate Change

While we acknowledge the current resource management framework is undergoing reform, it is important to note that local government will continue to operate under the Resource Management Act 1991 ("RMA") for several more years while transition to the new framework commences. We note that the emerging Climate Adaptation Act (CAA) framework, which forms part of the RMA reform, appears to be moving towards mandatory adaptive management planning⁷.

5.1 Planning under uncertainty

Planning for the effects of climate change and natural hazards requires effective decisions being made under conditions of deep uncertainty. In other words, we do not know how far or how fast the climate will change, or how this will affect communities in the coming decades, but we need to be ready to adapt to these changes and make decisions to enable future resilience. This situation is not unique to the Waikato District and is being experienced worldwide.

In the face of uncertainties surrounding climate change impacts, Councils are tasked with making informed decisions. Consequently, adopting a Dynamic Adaptive Planning Pathway (DAPP) approach becomes crucial. This adaptive approach enables councils to navigate uncertainties and develop flexible strategies that can be adjusted over time to align with changing circumstances and knowledge. By embracing the DAPP approach, the Partner Councils can respond to the challenges posed by climate change and ensure resilient and sustainable futures for their communities.

5.2 Legislative Context

There are several legislative documents currently informing long-term adaptive management planning, primarily under the Resource Management Act. The following sections outline the regulatory framework and its relevance to Waikato District adaptive management planning.

5.2.1 New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement

The NZCPS provides direction for resource management in relation to New Zealand's coastal environment. The NZCPS is the only compulsory national policy statement (NPS) under the RMA.

Policies in the NZCPS directs Councils to identify areas potentially affected by coastal hazards, prioritise areas at high risk and assess hazard risks over a period of at least 100 years. The NZCPS requires that subdivision, land use and development are managed to avoid increasing the risk of harm from coastal hazards, and encouraging changes that reduce hazard risks, including managed retreat. This includes the promotion of alternatives to hard protection structures, favouring natural defences but also

⁷ MFE Webinar 'Implementing the new RM system online hui' 18th May 2023

recognising that in some areas, hard protection structures may be the only practical means to protect existing infrastructure.

5.2.2 National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management and National Environmental Standards for Freshwater

Te Mana o te Wai is identified as the fundamental concept of the National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020 (“NPSFM 2020”). It is a concept that refers to the *“fundamental importance of water and recognises that protecting the health of freshwater protects the health and well-being of the wider environment. It protects the mauri of the wai. The concept of Te Mana o te Wai is about restoring and preserving the balance between the water, the wider environment and the community.”* Te Mana o te Wai applies to all aspects of freshwater management.

Alongside the NPSFM 2020, is the National Environmental Standard for Freshwater 2020 (“NESF”). The NESF sets out requirements for certain activities that pose risks to freshwater and freshwater ecosystems. A particular focus of the NESF is the protection of natural inland wetlands, setting minimum requirements for farming activities and ensuring connectivity of fish habitat through the maintenance of fish passage.

The direction and requirements of both the NPSFM and the NESF are relevant to adaptive planning in the Waikato District.

5.2.3 National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022

The Waikato District has fertile soils and highly productive agricultural land. The National Policy Statement for Highly Productive Land 2022 (“NPSHPL”) requires Councils to map and appropriately zone highly productive land and manage the subdivision, use and development of this non-renewable resource.

Land classified as Land Use Capability 1, 2, or 3 is defined in the NPSHPL as being Highly Productive land.

Given the highly productive nature of a significant area of land in the Waikato District illustrated in **Figure 2** consideration of the direction in the NPSHPL to protect highly productive land will be relevant to any adaptive management planning for the Waikato District.

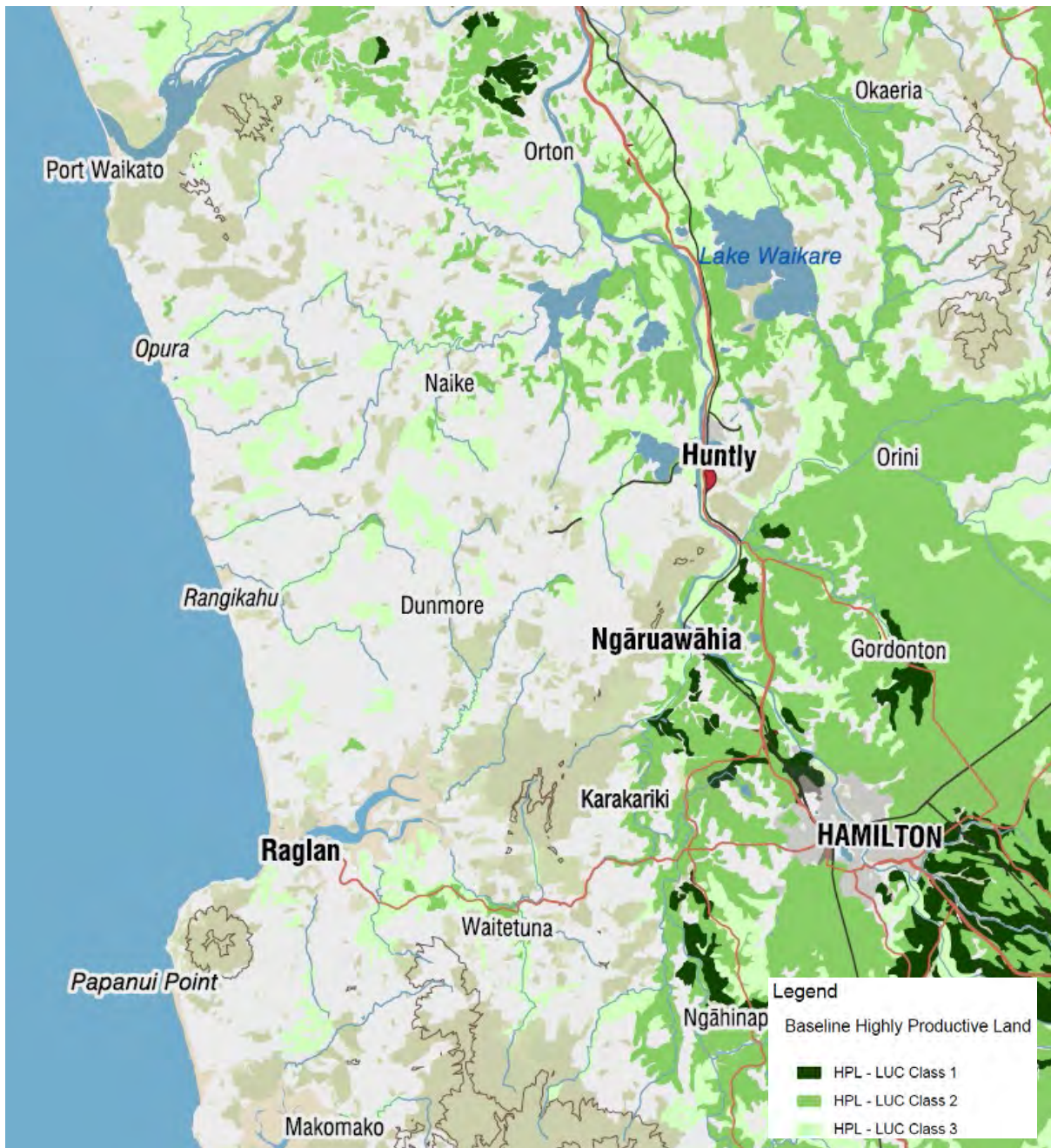


Figure 2 Highly Productive Land in the Waikato District (Source Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research)

5.2.4 Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941

The Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1941 (“SCRC Act”) makes provision for the conservation of soil resources, the prevention of damage by erosion and make better provision for the protection of property from damage by floods.

The entirety of the Waikato District is managed through River Management Zones as illustrated on **Figure 3**. While much of the original SCRCA has since been repealed, it still provides powers for regional councils (and the Minister for the Environment) to undertake catchment works to promote soil conservation or

minimise and prevent damage by floods and erosion. These works are subject to the RMA.⁸ The roles and responsibilities of Councils under the SCRC Act will factor into adaptive management planning for the Waikato District.

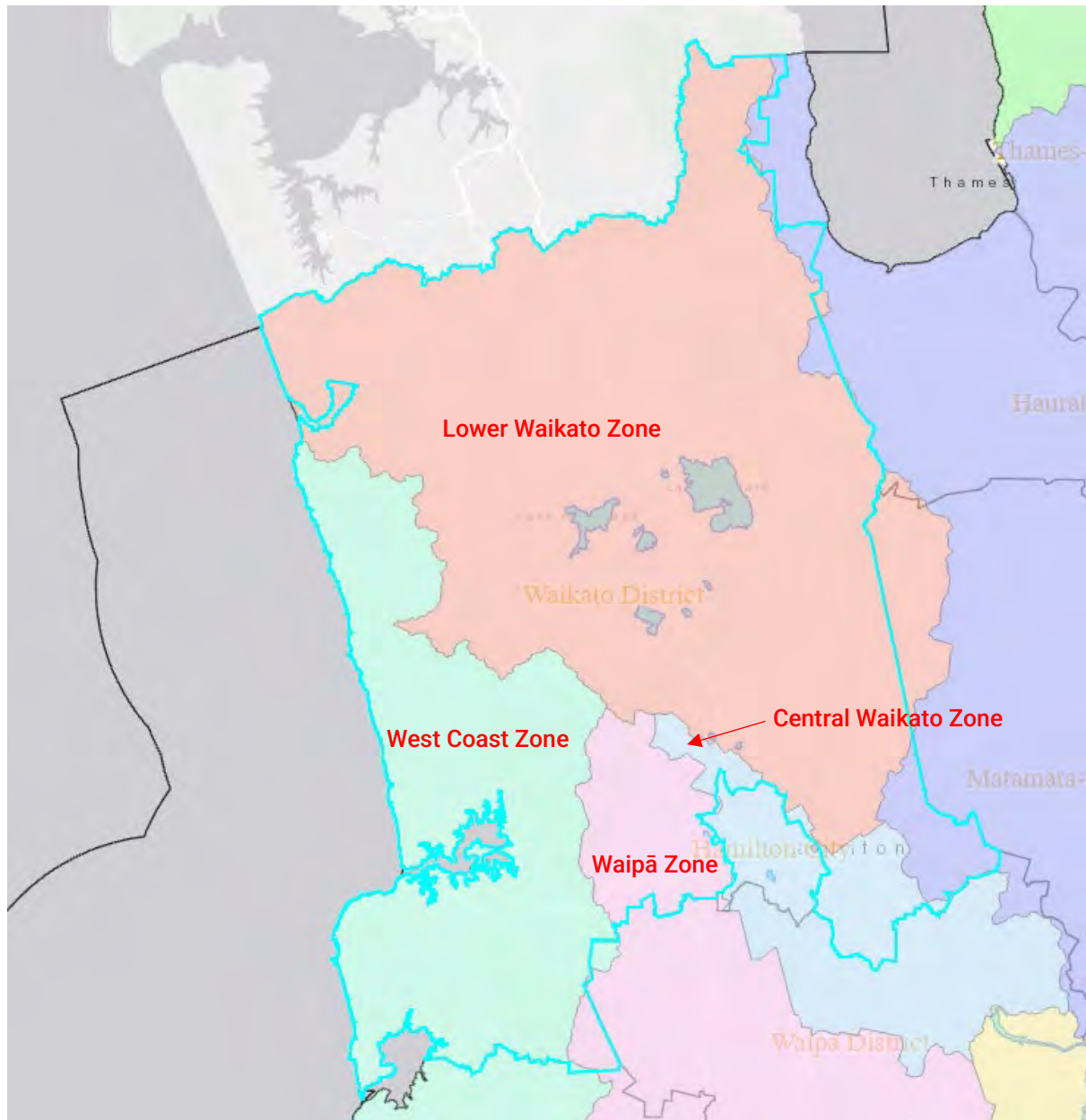


Figure 3 River Management Zones in the Waikato District (Source Waikato Regional Council)

⁸ https://www.waikatodistrict.govt.nz/docs/default-source/your-council/plans-policies-and-bylaws/plans/district-plan-review/stage-2/section-32-reports/section-32-natural-hazards-and-climate-change.pdf?sfvrsn=2e2c8bc9_2

5.3 RMA Reform + Climate Adaptation Act (CAA)

The reform of the RMA commenced in February 2021, with the announcement to replace the existing RMA with three new Acts:

5.3.1.1 Natural and Built Environments Act (“NBA”) and Spatial Planning Act (“SPA”)

The **Natural and Built Environments Act (“NBA”)** is the main replacement for the RMA, developed to protect and restore the environment while better enabling development.

The **Spatial Planning Act (“SPA”)** requires the development of long-term regional spatial strategies to help coordinate and integrate decisions made under relevant legislation.

Status: MFE have described the NBA and SPA having mechanisms that could support adaptive management planning processes. As at May 2023, the Natural and Built Environment Bill and Spatial Planning Bill are currently being considered by the Environment Select Committee. They will report back to parliament on the Bills on 27 June 2023. Over 3000 submissions were received and projected timeframe is for these two bills to become law in mid-2023.

5.3.2 Climate Adaptation Act (“CAA”)

The **Climate Adaptation Act (“CAA”)** is being designed to help New Zealand better deal with climate change, particularly ‘managed retreat’ (the strategic relocation of communities or assets prone to natural hazards – like increased flooding or coastal inundation). The CAA forms the third element of the reform replacing the RMA.

Status: The CAA, is yet to be released. MFE have indicated the CAA is planned for release in late 2023. In May 2023, in an online webinar, MFE describe the CAA as trying to achieve mandatory adaptive management planning and then managed retreat. The language around managed retreat is also being reviewed as it is deemed to have negative connotations.

Figure 4 is a diagram provided by the Ministry for the Environment (“MfE”) to describe the relationship between the new Acts. The relationship and connection between the NBA and SPA to the CAA is not yet clear.

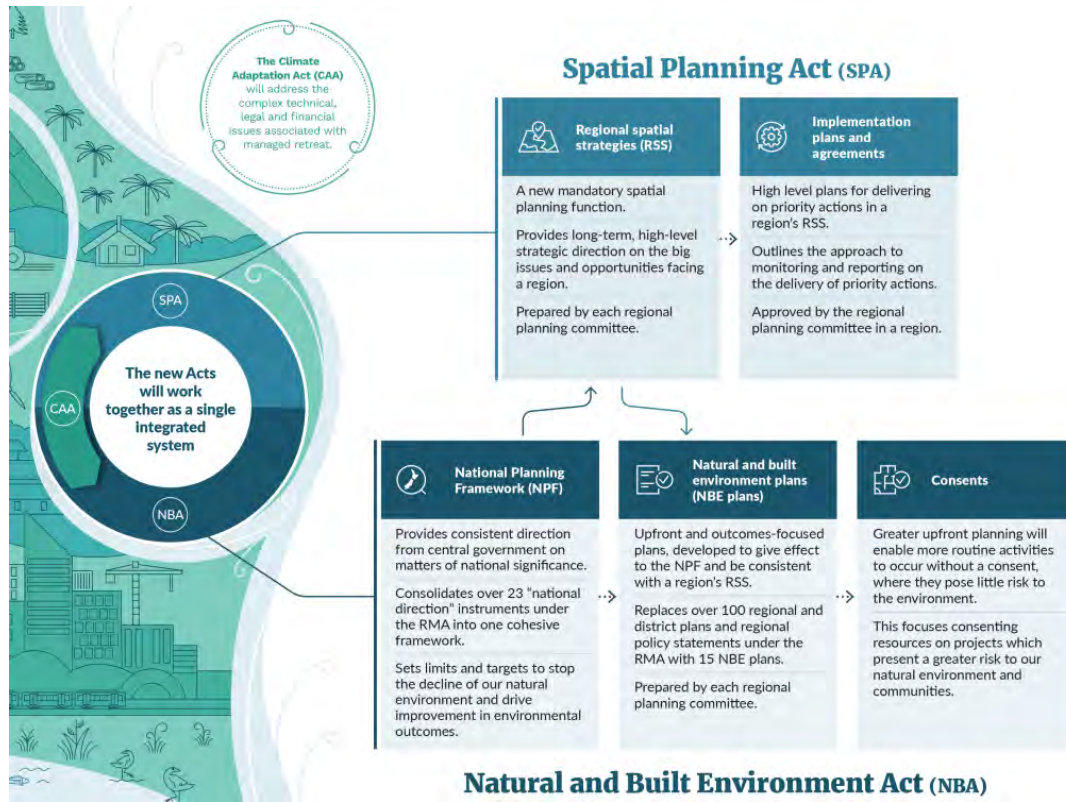


Figure 4 Relationship of new Acts replacing the RMA.

Figure 5 shows the overview of resource management reforms and the comparison between the existing and future system.

Overview – system comparison

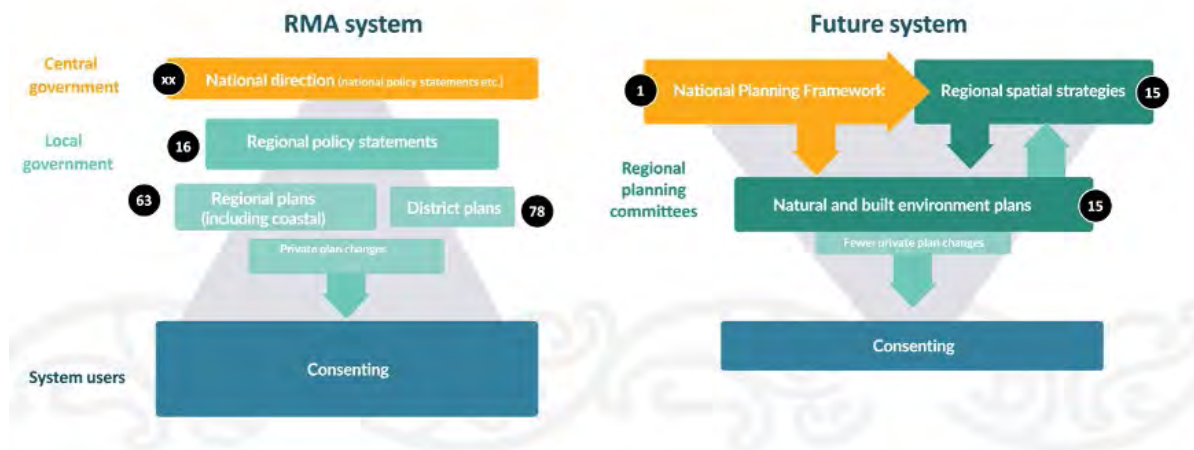


Figure 5 Comparison between the existing and future system

The RM Reform programme will have implications for the future implementation of any outcomes of adaptive management planning in the Waikato District, however, as illustrated in **Figure 6** the timelines for transitioning are lengthy and the current system under the RMA will still be operational for some time yet.

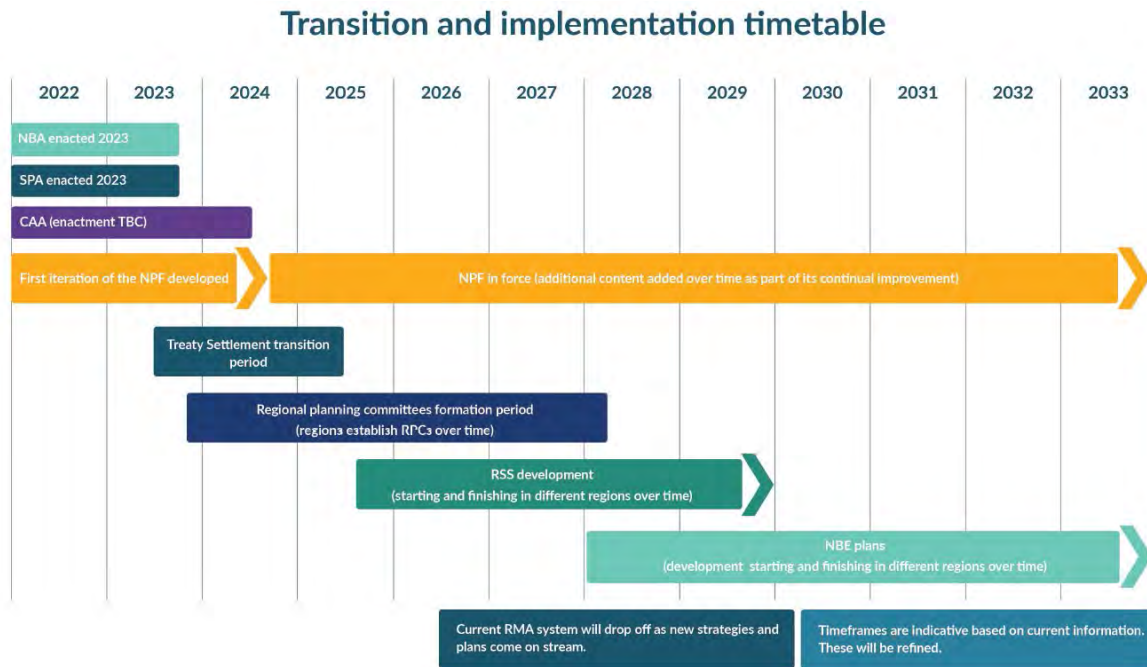


Figure 6 Timeline of RM Reform

5.3.3 Affordable Water Government Reform

At the time of writing, reform of the role of local government in relation the wastewater, drinking water and stormwater is taking place. This reform proposes that the responsibility for water services will shift from individual councils to ten new Water Services Entities. Waikato District falls under the 'Waikato' water service entity. Under the 10-entity model, every territorial authority owner will be represented on the entity's regional representative group. These groups will be designed to provide "regional and local level direction and oversight. They set the strategic and performance expectations, appoint the board, approve the strategic direction, and monitor the performance of the Water Services Entities in their area".⁹

While there is still uncertainty surrounding this process, it may result in changes to the management of stormwater in the Waikato District and therefore, how adaptive management planning may be implemented.

⁹ <https://www.waterservicesreform.govt.nz/assets/Fact-Sheet-1Public-facing-fact-sheet-Reforming-our-Water-Services-v2.pdf>

6 Dynamic Adaptive Planning Pathways (DAPP)

To assist local government with this complex challenge, in December 2017 the Ministry for the Environment (“MfE”) published guidance for Local Government on Coastal Hazards and Climate Change¹⁰. This guidance is currently being refreshed by MfE.

Central to the MfE guidance is the use of Dynamic Adaptive Planning Pathways (“DAPP”) as a tool to aid decision making in the face of deep uncertainty about future conditions. While the guidance is focused on coastal hazards, DAPP can equally be applied to inland hazards and climate change effects, including river flooding.

The guidance is structured around an iterative 10-step framework. It is made up of elements to secure and implement a long-term strategic planning and decision-making framework for coastal areas potentially, or already, affected by coastal hazards and climate change effects such as sea level rise

The Partner Councils have confirmed that they wish to ensure that adaptive management planning in the Waikato District aligns with the MfE guidance wherever possible.

The 10-step framework decision cycle is structure around the following key questions (Figure 7):

1. What is happening?
2. What matters most?
3. What can we do about it?
4. How can we implement the strategy?
5. How is it working?

¹⁰ <https://environment.govt.nz/publications/coastal-hazards-and-climate-change-guidance-for-local-government/>



Figure 7 - 10-step decision framework. Source: Ministry for the Environment, Coastal Hazards and Climate Change Guidance for Local Government 2017 – Adapted from Max Oulton (University of Waikato) and UN-Habitat (2014)

We note for completeness that, at the time of writing, the 2017 guidance is currently being refreshed by the Ministry for the Environment. We understand that the updated guidance is expected to be released towards to the middle of 2023. We are not expecting significant changes to the application of DAPP but recommend that the Partner Councils maintain a watching brief as the new guidance is prepared and released.

6.1 Roles and Responsibilities of Local Government

Both regional and local government have roles and responsibilities when it comes to climate change and adaptive management planning. The provisions of the RMA and the Local Government Act (“LGA”) result in functional interactions between territorial and regional authorities. Some of these responsibilities overlap and no clear lead council is defined in legislation. This can result in uncertainty around implementation and this needs to be worked through by the Partner Councils.

This has caused implementation challenges on other similar projects in New Zealand, and we consider a solution for the entire Waikato Region would provide certainty and consistency to adaptive management planning projects throughout the region.

Although very specific to the Hawkes Bay, it is worth noting the 2021 implementation funding review by Raynor Asher KC¹¹ of the Clifton to Tangoio Coastal Hazards Strategy. His review stated that regional councils should take charge of all aspects of the prevention and mitigation of coastal hazards ... *“including deciding on preventative, mitigating or remedial works”*. The regional council would also make *“all decisions about rating for these works and collecting those rates”*.

Mr. Raynor goes on to state *“There is considerable scope for overlap and conflict between the roles of regional councils and territorial authorities. This is confirmed in the recent Report of the Resource Management Review Panel (RM Review Report)¹², where it was said that this lack of clarification of roles and responsibilities in the legislation can lead to “unhelpful overlap”¹³, resulting in tensions between local authorities in resolving issues and achieving outcomes (including conflicting regional and district policies).*

¹¹ <https://hbcoast.co.nz/assets/Uploads/Raynor-Asher-Hawkes-Bay-Review-06-5-21.pdf>

¹² Report of the Resource Management Review Panel, “New Directions for Resource Management in New Zealand” (June 2020) [RMA Report]

7 Case Studies

A key concept for this scoping study is to seek to integrate the learnings from other projects that have employed a DAPP approach to adaptive management planning. The following case studies have been prepared for this purpose.

7.1 Wharekawa Coast 2120

The Wharekawa Coast 2120 project sought to consider and plan for the future of the Wharekawa Coast area within the Hauraki District. This project sought to respond to multiple hazards risks including freshwater flooding, coastal erosion and coastal inundation. This project also integrates a broader, forward-looking community plan that responds to community aspirations for the area.

The Wharekawa Coast 2120 project structure is presented in **Figure 8**:

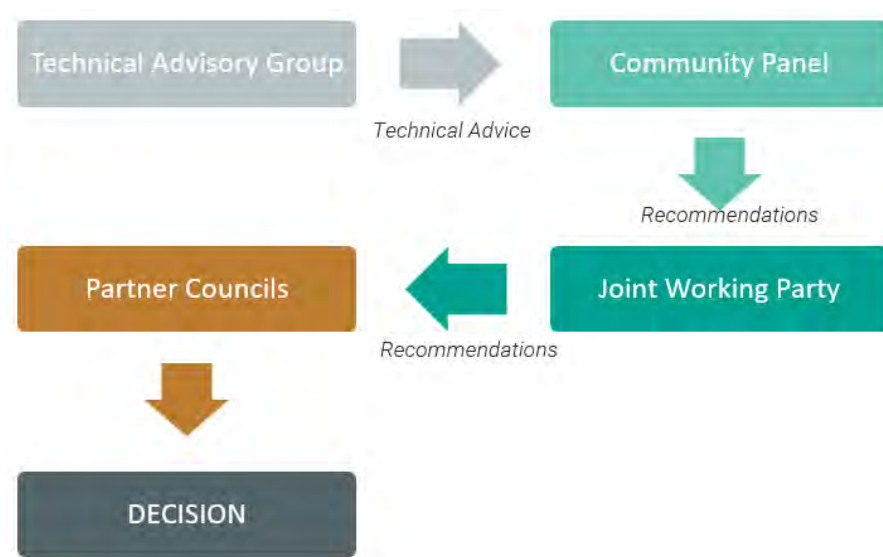


Figure 8 Wharekawa Coast 2120 Project Structure

The **Technical Advisory Group's** ("TAG") role is to manage the project and to assist the Community Panel and the Joint Working Party with technical support to facilitate sound and informed recommendations and decision making.

The **Community Panel** developed recommendations for the Wharekawa Coast 2120 Joint Working Party. As a "bottom up" approach, the Panel were supported to explore community values, natural hazards risks and possible responses, with support from and access to technical expertise both within and independent of the Partner Councils. The Panel led the process of engaging with the wider community and captured their process and outcomes in a recommendations report.

See **Appendix Two** for the Wharekawa 2120 Community Panel Terms of Reference.

The **Joint Working Party** (“JWP”) received the recommendations report from the Community Panel and formed their recommendations to the representative Partner Councils who will ultimately make decisions on the community plan.

Figure 9 provides an overview of the process designed for the development of the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project. While the total number of workshops and the process followed was slightly different to that outlined below, this process diagram outlines the general order followed, which worked to achieve the first 6 steps of MfE’s 10-step decision cycle.

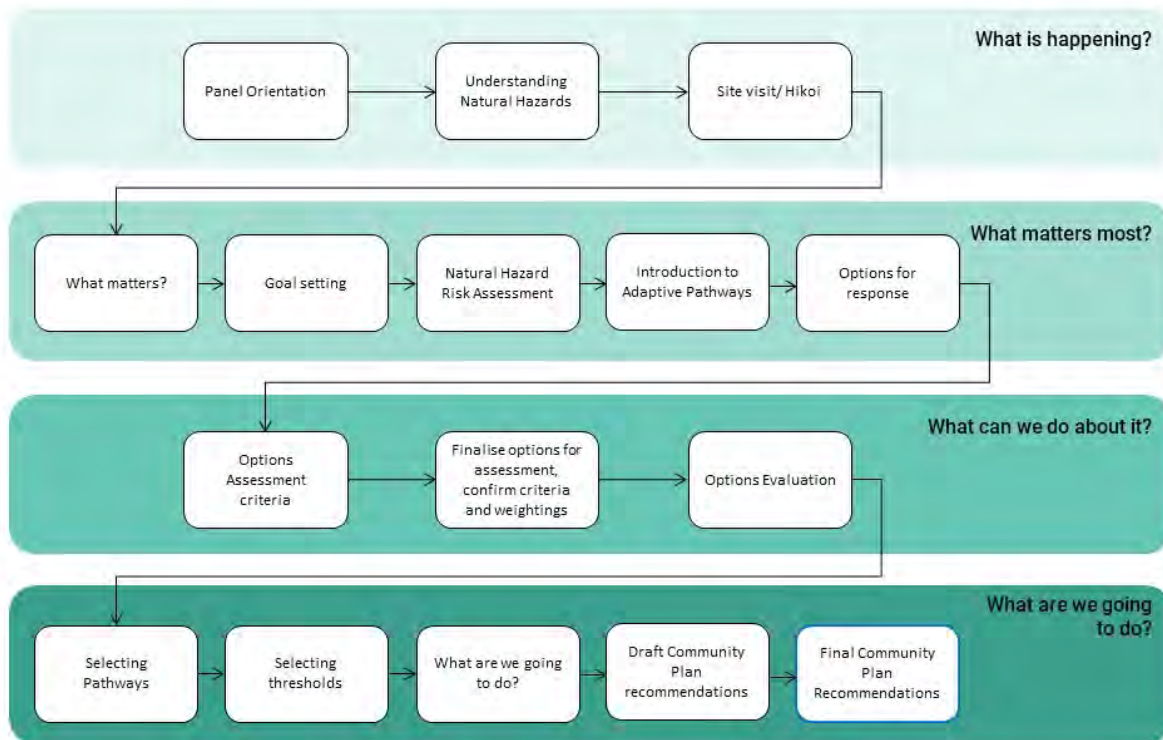


Figure 9 Wharekawa Coast Community Panel Workshop Schedule Outline

To further progress project outcomes, the Community Panel elected to form Focus Groups from the existing panel. The Focus Groups worked outside of the Panel workshop schedule to progress the development of the community plan under five topics:

- River Flooding
- Community Risk
- Coastal Hazards
- Community Plan
- Civil Defence

7.1.1 Potential process refinements

Some identified refinements to the Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Panel process are included below and recommended for consideration in scoping Waikato District adaptive management planning.

1. Role of Iwi / Māori

The Wharekawa Coast 2120 process had good levels of engagement with Ngāti Paoa and Ngāti Whanaunga from the very early stages, with representatives appointed to and actively participating in both the Joint Working Party and Community Panel.

While it was an early focus of the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project, one outcome that was not achieved was the comprehensive reflection of Ngāti Paoa and Ngāti Whanaunga values through the process, which occurred informally and, on a case-by-case basis, but not holistically. This has left a significant “work on” for the Partner Councils.

In addition to tangata whenua representative appointments to equivalent governance and working groups for Waikato District adaption management planning processes, we recommend an early and targeted discussion occurs with iwi / hapū to determine and co-design an approach for identifying values to inform and guide decision-making and adaptive management planning efforts for the Waikato District.

2. Role of the Community Panel

The Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Panel process was strongly community-led. This saw the community panel have almost full autonomy in the design of the process, including scope and pace.

This extended to technical reports prepared to support the panel process, which were not published or released until they were endorsed by the Panel.

This approach was effective in achieving high levels of buy-in to the process and outcomes, and effectively built trust between Partner Councils and the community. In our view, this was also an approach that was well suited to the circumstances of this community, who have struggled with natural hazards impacts and a general lack of trust and engagement with the Partner Councils in the aftermath of Auckland Council amalgamation process.

However, this approach also placed a significant load on the members of the panel who were showing signs of fatigue toward the end of the process, and contributed directly to what was a long and expensive process for the Partner Councils. Given this approach was bespoke to the needs of the Wharekawa community, we see value in considering refinements on the community panel’s role for future projects.

While there were additional challenges for the project associated with navigating through the Covid-19 pandemic, we consider that there are opportunities to refine the role of the community panel in such a way that maximises the benefits of the bottom-up approach, while gaining some process efficiency.

We suggest refinement that would see the establishment of a Community Reference Group (“CRG”), rather than a community panel. The CRG would operate in a testing and feedback capacity, rather than the content development and heavy-lifting role taken by the Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Panel. Designed and implemented properly, the CRG approach could achieve most of the benefits of the panel process, including the information sharing, relationship and trust building, high degree of ownership and buy-in, while reducing process time and uncertainty.

3. Chair of the Community Panel

The chairperson of any committee or panel is an important and time-consuming role.

In the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project, the community panel was established with a community member as chairperson. This was done in the interests of autonomy and agency for that community.

We highlight that while there was a change in the chairperson partway through the project which was disruptive, the project was incredibly fortunate to have a highly effective person take up that role and drive the project to completion. However, we also consider that the role carried significant, and in our view at times unreasonable, demands. Should the process not be successful or result in outcomes that the wider community don't support, having a community-based chair risks putting that person in a difficult position. Further, there was some inefficiency in agenda setting being done by TAG, and meetings being run by the community chair; the panel regularly did not make it through all agenda items.

We consider that there is merit in considering the appointment of a Councillor to the role of chair. As an elected representative, they are still fundamentally a community advocate and member, but can also be fairly remunerated for their time and have familiarity with council process and meeting procedures.

This would allow the community members to be involved in the process equally and without additional demands on their time or separation of role and would mean that the more administrative requirements of the chair, including management of meetings and keeping to the agenda timing, could be left to the appointed councillor.

4. Preparation of technical work to inform the project

During the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project, much of the technical supporting information was developed alongside the community panel engagement process. It became standard practice to seek “sign off” from the panel before a technical report was published.

While beneficial for building understanding and trust, this meant that at times, information was “drip-fed” to the panel as reports became available, and that information was not always available to use and inform next steps and decision making. This led to some delays, and some confusion about the role of each technical report and how it fit together with other reports and information to inform decision-making.

It is recommended that the core technical information required for the project is identified and developed ahead of the intensive community engagement process commencing. Summaries for community engagement purposes can then be prepared and made available. Core technical reports can then be considered, understood, amended if need be and then confirmed as baseline information as part of the early phase of community engagement.

5. Community Engagement

The Wharekawa Coast 2120 project being forced online due to Covid-19 meeting restrictions really highlighted the value and effectiveness of meeting face-to-face.

It was also clear that there was a feeling of consultation fatigue amongst the community because of the various processes and projects where community input was being sought. In recognition of this, it is recommended that adaptive management planning for the Waikato District look for opportunities to align with existing consultation programmes and structures to ensure efficient use of the community’s time and energy. The role of community panel or CRG members as local experts rather than community representatives is also important and allows space for members to share their individual views.

The Wharekawa Coast Community Panel also achieved a great amount from their own efforts at engaging with their community on various parts of the project. This peer-to-peer engagement was hugely valuable in increasing community buy-in to the project and its outcomes. This style of engagement is encouraged for any adaptive management planning in the Waikato District.

7.2 Port Waikato Resilience Strategy

The purpose of the Port Waikato Resilience Strategy is to develop a comprehensive plan that enhances the community's ability to adapt and respond to the challenges posed by climate change and other hazards. **Figure 10** outlines the development process for this project.

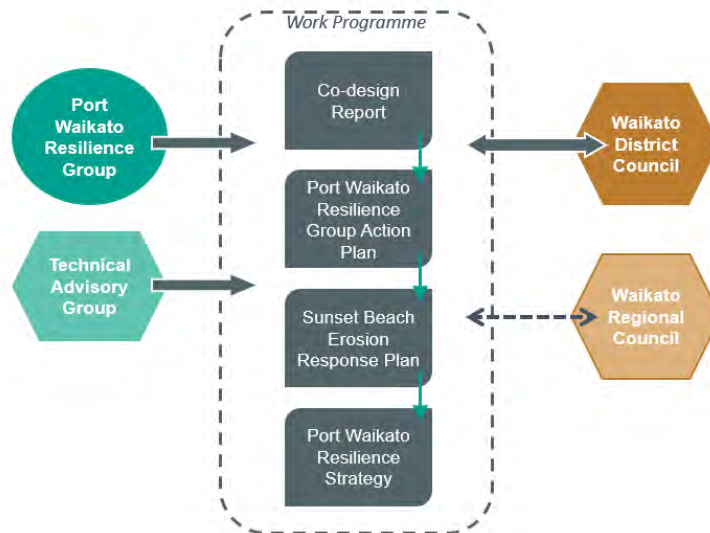


Figure 10 Development process for the Port Waikato Resilience project

The Port Waikato Resilience project is ongoing. Some lessons learnt from this process to date include:

- Community representation:** Adopting a community panel or community reference group approach can build strong relationships between the council and community and result in effective engagement. However, in developing these groups, broad community representation is important. The Port Waikato Resilience Group is a self-appointed group made up of active community members. It is important to make a space for all members of the community to be represented in future adaptation projects with a broader focus.
- Short-term challenges and long-term planning:** Balancing short-term threats and long-term planning can be challenging, a situation experienced at Port Waikato. While it is critical to consider immediate risks, the nature of adaptation projects is their focus on long-term adaptive management planning strategies. Acknowledging the community's willingness and ability to plan for natural hazards in the long term when faced with immediate natural hazard challenges will influence future adaptive management planning projects.
- Importance of project management:** Given the size, complexity, and uncertainty of many elements of adaptive management planning, effective project management is crucial to ensure that adaptive management planning projects stay on track and progress within project budgets and timeframes.

Coordination, implementation, and monitoring of adaptive management measures is crucial, as is effective and regular communication to both the community and Councillors.

- **Right people and expert advice:** Establishing the project with the right people involved from the outset, implementing appropriate project structures, and seeking expert advice are vital. This includes involvement of iwi / hapū at a governance and community level, engaging technical expertise as required and having access to internal expertise from both Councils helps ensure the plan's effectiveness and success.

7.3 Clifton to Tangoio Coastal Hazards Strategy

The Clifton to Tangoio Coastal Hazards Strategy¹⁴ in Hawke's Bay involves collaboration between local government, tangata whenua, community stakeholders, and scientific experts. The long-term vision for the Strategy is that *"Coastal communities, businesses and critical infrastructure from Tangoio to Clifton are resilient to the effects of coastal hazards"*. This strategy provides a framework for assessing coastal hazards risks and identifying options for the management risks for the next 100 years from now to 2120.

The key components of this project that are:

- **Adaptative planning focus** - to assess risks, identify adaptation options, and develop a long-term resilience plan.
- **Joint Committee** - This committee brings together elected representatives from Hastings District Council, Napier City Council and Hawke's Bay Regional Council with members appointed from Maungaharuru-Tangitū Trust, Mana Ahuriri Trust and Heretaunga Tamatea Settlement Trust. Supporting the joint committee is a Technical Advisory Group consisting of senior staff from each of the partner councils, including engineers, policy planners and financial advisors, with consultant advisors as required.
- **Community-led panels** – Two community-led 'Assessment Panel' were formed and have provided recommendations to the Joint Committee. The recommendations of the Assessment Panels were based on coastal 'units' defined as part of the initial hazard and risk assessment work. The Assessment Panels developed their recommendations through an 11-workshop programme which included site visits, technical presentations, gap analysis, public feedback and evaluation, economic analysis and final recommendation report.
- **Implementation arrangements** – with years spent developing an adaptive planning approach, the Councils took time to work through preferred implementation arrangements between them, particularly in relation to funding the consenting, construction, monitoring and maintenance of actions within the pathways. An agreed implementation approach which sees the regional council

¹⁴ <https://www.hbcoast.co.nz/>

lead implementation (including the transfer of ownership for existing coastal hazard mitigation structures and projects) has been outlined in a Memorandum of Transition between the Councils.

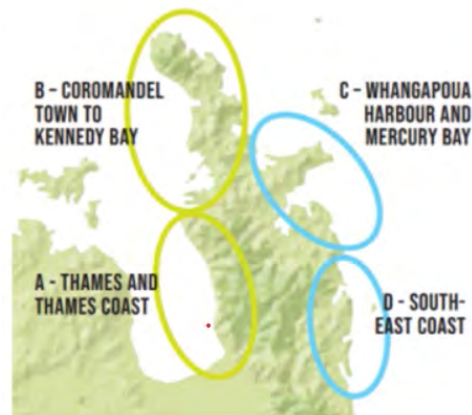
7.4 Thames Coromandel District Council

Waikato Regional Council have been working with Thames Coromandel District Council (TCDC) on long term adaptation planning¹⁵. The aim is “safeguard their community, environment, and infrastructure from the impacts of climate change and foster long-term sustainability and resilience”. In 2018 TCDC adopted the Coastal Management Strategy, which sets out a range of initiatives over the coming years to better manage coastal assets and understand the risk of coastal inundation and coastal erosion.

TCDC are following the MFE guidance for DAPP and have developed Shoreline Management Plans¹⁶ for the entire TCDC coastline, which were adopted in 2022. This project resulted in 138 coastal adaptation pathways for the TCDC coastline. TCDC are currently preparing an implementation plan for the coastal adaptation pathways in the 2024-2034 Long Term Plan.

Coastal Panels were set up for the following areas:

- Thames and the Thames Coast (Kopu to Kereta).
- The Coromandel Coast to Kennedy Bay.
- Whangapoua Harbour and the Mercury Bay Coast (to Hot Water Beach).
- The Southeast Coast (Tairua through to Whangamata)



Their objective was the co-development of coastal adaptation pathways with TCDC and its experts. Eight community members were selected onto each Coastal Panel, in addition to the Community Board representatives. Panel members were tasked with representing the views of their community and working through the development of Coastal Adaptation Pathways based on the steps set out in MfE's guidance, supported by technical experts.

¹⁵ <https://thames-coromandelcaps.ireport.royalhaskoningdhv.com/approach/community-led>

¹⁶ <https://www.tcdc.govt.nz/Our-Community/Council-Projects/Current-Projects/Coastal-Management/Shoreline-Management-Pathways-Project>

7.5 International and academic guidance

There is a rich supply of international and academic literature available for adaptive management planning. Of note are the following:

7.5.1 Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change 6th Assessment Report¹⁷

The purpose of the IPCC 6th Assessment is to provide a comprehensive and up-to-date scientific assessment of climate change, including its impacts, risks, and potential mitigation options, to inform policymakers and guide global climate change adaptation efforts. Shown during the 30th of May 2023 Councillor workshop, the infographic in Figure 11 (borrowed from this IPCC assessment) is a stark reminder of the difference in experience current and future generations will face with regards to climate change.

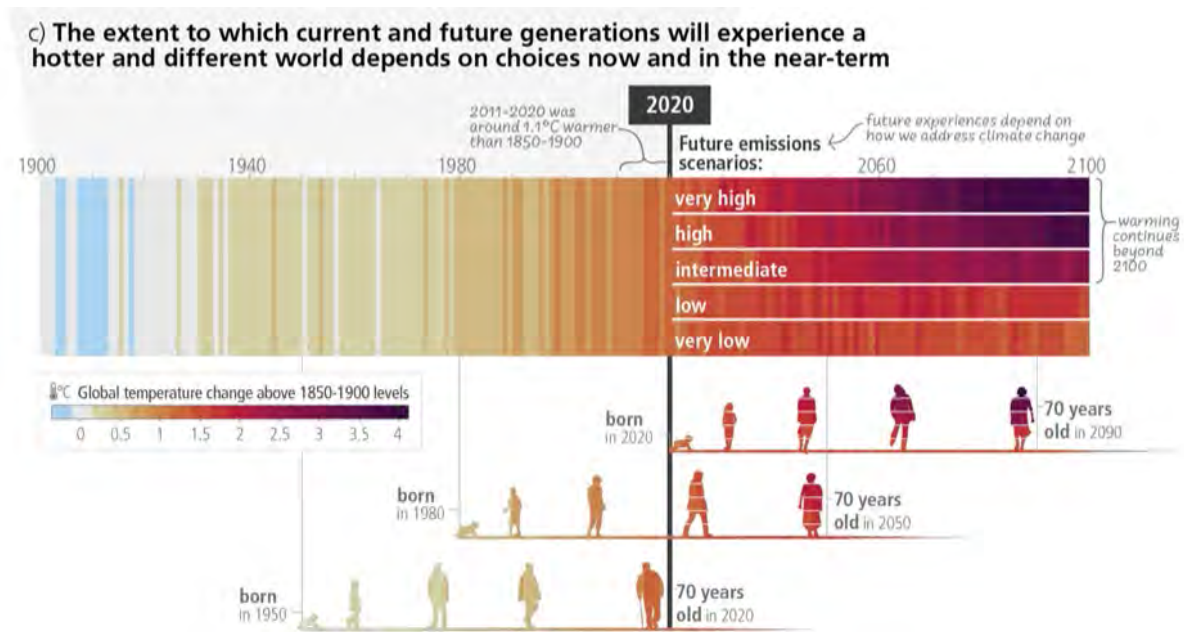


Figure 11 Generational experiences of Climate Change (Source IPCC 6th Assessment)

¹⁷ <https://www.ipcc.ch/report/sixth-assessment-report-cycle/>

7.5.2 Deep South National Science Challenge¹⁸

The purpose of the Deep South National Science Challenge is to enhance understanding of adaptive responses to climate change impacts in the southern region of New Zealand. The website has several tools information to help adapt to climate change. Of particular interest are the planning tools available including:

- Economic modelling tools which integrate multiple climate scenarios with traditional cost benefit analysis
- Adaptive planning tools which define short-, medium- and long-term decisions, depending on how and when climate impacts emerge
- Decision-making frameworks which make visible the cultural drivers in decision making.
- Tools that integrate a mātauranga Māori approach to adaptive management planning including: tikanga for adaptive management planning, protection wāhi tapu, Te Tiriti o Waitangi and involving rangatahi.

7.5.3 Resilience to Nature's Challenges National Science Challenge¹⁹

The Resilience to Nature's Challenge National Science Challenges aims to address the impact of natural hazards and enhancing the resilience of communities and infrastructure. The primary purpose is to bring together researchers, experts, and stakeholders to develop a better understanding of natural hazards, their effects, and strategies to mitigate and respond to them. The research brings together physical science, mātauranga Māori, social science, and engineering research to develop policies and tools that reduce the social and economic impacts of future natural hazard events. There are a number of research projects in the planning, policy and governance space.

7.5.4 NZ SeaRise: Te Tai Pari O Aotearoa

The NZ SeaRise: Te Tai Pari O Aotearoa programme aims to improve predictions of sea-level rise in Aotearoa New Zealand to 2100 and beyond. The programme has released location specific sea-level rise projections out to the year 2300 for every 2 km of the coast of Aotearoa New Zealand. These projections can be accessed through a new online tool²⁰ developed by Takiwā, a data management and analytics platform.

¹⁸ <https://deepsouthchallenge.co.nz/>

¹⁹ <https://resiliencechallenge.nz/>

²⁰ <https://www.searise.nz/maps-2>

8 Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Approach

In consideration of the matters discussed previously, the following recommended approach has been developed for implementing DAPP and adaptive management planning in the Waikato District.

8.1 Considerations to inform DAPP in the Waikato District

Based on the information currently available, there is a lot of learning we can apply to adaptive management planning in the Waikato District. The following overarching considerations are key to decision-making and project scoping:

- Effective iwi / hapū engagement is critical and early and ongoing involvement is preferred. Open discussion and joint planning for resourcing, availability, defining what a good engagement process looks like and determining joint outcomes and objectives is recommended.
- Developing long-term adaptive management plans is a complex and time-consuming process, especially when multiple hazards are involved and when communities are faced with immediate hazards/ civil defence emergencies.
- Dealing with climate change impacts is a significant challenge as there is deep uncertainty about what the future holds. However, this is a challenge faced worldwide and new information, approaches and learnings are developing all the time. These new approaches can be incorporated in future reviews of any adaptive management plans, ensuring that any approach to managing natural hazard risk is truly adaptive.
- The costs and time required for adaptive management planning can vary depending on the chosen management options.
- Climate change adaptive management planning is an emotional issue, requiring consideration of current and future community concerns and values.
- The upcoming Climate Adaptation Act is anticipated to reinforce the requirement for long-term adaptive management planning for Councils.

The projects described in Section 7 are at different stages and their implementation is ongoing, however, we recommend adopting the following learnings from these projects (which are particularly based on Traverse Environmental's experience in undertaking these projects alongside communities).

- **Start with the end in mind:** Begin the planning process with a clear vision of the desired outcomes and how the project will be implemented. Starting with the end goal in mind helps guide decision-making, prioritise actions, and ensure that the plan aligns with long-term objectives.
- **Community involvement:** Adopting a community panel or community reference group approach, although potentially time-consuming and uncertain, can build strong relationships and effectively engagement. This approach proves valuable for adaptive management planning projects.
- **Short-term challenges and long-term planning:** Balancing short-term threats and long-term planning can be challenging. It is important to consider immediate risks while maintaining a focus on long-term adaptive management planning strategies. This was acknowledged during the 30th of May workshop with WDC/ WRC councillors when a question was raised around whether communities understand what resilience is and how to deal with uncertainty when making decisions. The Councillor pointed out the community is often working at the civil defence stage in response to immediate natural hazard risks and not necessarily focused on long-term planning. It is important to acknowledge that the community's understanding and willingness to plan for natural hazards in the long term, when faced with immediate natural hazard challenges, will influence adaptive management planning projects. As a result, sensitivity to this issue is needed alongside a clear scope and clear project deliverables for any adaptive management planning project.
- **Avoid rushing:** Climate change adaptive management planning should not be rushed or treated as a "paint by numbers" exercise. The complexity of these projects requires careful consideration and a comprehensive approach. This is particularly important when ensuring community involvement in these processes. Community involvement relies on volunteers many of whom will have multiple other commitments to juggle to be part of any adaptive management planning project. Most community members will be unfamiliar with the technical nature of climate change and natural hazards planning with time and technical guidance needed to assist community members.
- **Importance of project management:** Given the size, complexity, and uncertainty of many elements of climate change adaptive management planning, effective project management is crucial. Coordination, implementation, and monitoring of adaptive management measures is crucial, as is regular communication to both the community and Council.
- **Right people and expert advice:** Establishing the project with the right people involved, implementing appropriate project structures, and seeking expert advice are vital. Involving knowledgeable and experienced individuals helps ensure the plan's effectiveness and success.

8.2 District-wide Programme

8.2.1 Priority communities

Given the scale of the Waikato District, the range and complexity of natural hazards experienced and the range of communities involved, we recommend that adaptive management planning is not undertaken as a single project. Instead, we recommend priority communities are identified and a staged approach to adaptive management planning is undertaken. It is therefore recommended that both **Port Waikato** and **Raglan** are prioritised for long-term adaptive planning in the first instance. We envisage these projects can be run in parallel.

This is based on existing natural hazards being experienced by these communities, and the high level of vulnerability to both short term and long-term climate-related natural hazards. There was strong feedback from WDC Councillors that these communities should be prioritised.

It is important that the adaptive management planning programme is designed to enable its application to be extended in a sustainable way (from a resourcing point of view) to the whole of the Waikato District in time.

We anticipate that staging the project to focus on two communities at once will provide economies of scale and overall cost effectiveness for both the community's and Council. Although the outcome for each community may differ, the mechanics and project structure of undertaking a DAPP approach will be similar for both Raglan and Port Waikato. The following are examples of work that can be undertaken for both communities at the same time:

- Social impact assessment
- Coastal process and hazard assessment
- Risk assessment
- Workshop collateral and information
- Project management and administration.

See **Appendix Three** for feedback from WDC/ WRC Councillors on priority communities and project phasing from the workshop held on the 30th May 2023.

8.2.2 Regional prioritisation

It is important to note that Waikato Regional Council are developed a high-level regional-scale natural hazard risk assessment to assist with the prioritisation of communities to undertake DAPP. This assessment will highlight other Waikato district communities that are exposed to natural hazards that are likely to require DAPP in the future. This information will be essential to identifying other communities within the District to undertake future adaptive management planning projects.

8.3 Programme Governance

8.3.1 Iwi / hapū partnership

Effective Iwi / hapū engagement is fundamental to a successful adaptive management planning. The Port Waikato Resilience Strategy has attempted but has not been successful at effective engagement with Iwi/hapū however we acknowledge efforts to engage are ongoing. It is recommended that early and targeted discussions occur with Iwi / hapū to determine and co-design an approach for identifying values to inform and guide decision-making and adaptive management planning efforts for the Waikato District.

At the 30 May workshop, WDC Councillors committed to having a high-level discussion on effective Iwi / hapū engagement and principles / approach to adaptive management planning in the Waikato District. During the workshop, the following points were made by Councillors:

- The importance of involving whanau and kaumatua in decision-making. Early engagement is crucial for successful outcomes. Community members want to be actively involved and collaborate as a team.
- A genuine partnership approach needed. Concerns about differing interpretations of "consultation" and pre-determined decisions. Consultation should go beyond presenting options.
- The need to be respectful of cultural considerations and the significance of incorporating tikanga and kawa such as opening and closing hui with karakia.
- WRC have communicated that there have been cases where Iwi / hapū have expressed a need to be supported in building capacity to provide mātauranga Māori and a Te Ao Māori lens. Similar feedback was received from Iwi partners in the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project.

8.3.2 Governance structure options

Dedicated project governance arrangements for adaptive management planning are important to successful project outcomes as has been highlighted through other natural hazard adaptive management planning projects. Four potential governance structures have been identified for consideration in overseeing adaptive management planning in the Waikato District. These are presented in **Table 3**, together with analysis of the benefits and disadvantages of each option. The four options are:

- Project Steering Group - Senior staff from WRC and WDC form a project steering group
- Existing Council Committee - An existing committee of WDC providing governance functions
- Joint Working Party - An informal Joint Working Party is formed, with Councillor (WDC +WRC) and Iwi / hapū representation
- Joint Committee - A formal Joint Committee is established (Clause 30(1)(b) of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act) with Councillor (WDC +WRC) and Iwi / hapū representation.

Table 3 Proposed governance options for Waikato District

Governance Option	Benefits	Disadvantages
Project Steering Group	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Most straight forward to establish • Lowest administration burden • Flexible and straight forward to call meetings 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Does not provide direct connection to elected representatives • Least formal arrangement – may not provide sufficient governance weight to process • Limits opportunity for WRC + Iwi / hapū governance involvement (unless staff and Iwi / hapū representatives are appointed) • Likely to double up on Technical Advisory Group functions / less division between operations and governance • Recommendations to Council may carry less weight than other options
Existing Council Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Makes use of existing governance arrangements • Recommendations to Council will carry more weight than Option 1 or 3. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limits opportunity for WRC + Iwi / hapū governance involvement • Does not provide dedicated / focused structure, may limit access / focus on resilience planning
Joint Working Party	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More flexible than a Joint Committee – meetings can be more readily called / less limited by process requirements • Provides opportunity for WRC + Iwi / hapū governance involvement 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Less formal than a Joint Committee – may struggle to secure Councillor attendance • Recommendations to Council may carry less weight than Option 2 or 4
Joint Committee	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Most formal arrangement, provides gravitas / recognises critical nature of the issue • Provides opportunity for WRC + Iwi / hapū governance involvement • Governed by LGA requirements for openness / transparency / standing order application etc • Recommendations to Council will carry weight 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Highest administrative burden • All meetings must be publicly advertised, reducing flexibility • May be seen to be adding additional / unnecessary sub-committee structures to Council

During the 30 May workshop, the WDC/ WRC Councillors expressed no strong preference for a particular governance structure, however noted the importance of reporting back to the community, not working in silos and having mana whenua involved in the governance of the project.

8.3.3 Recommended Governance Structure

Based on our experience with other adaptive management planning projects, and from WDC/ WRC Councillor feedback, we recommend the formation of a **Joint Committee (JC)**²¹ as the governing body for Waikato District adaptive management planning projects. We consider that this option provides the best balance of formality and flexibility and provides scope for a co-governance approach with Iwi / hapū and the Partner Councils. This approach is also appropriate if DAPP is undertaken concurrently for Raglan and Port Waikato.

8.3.4 Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Joint Committee

The Partner Councils are the ultimate decision makers when it comes to implementing the outcomes of the adaptive management planning work. The Joint Committee would be responsible for reporting their findings/ outcomes and making recommendations to the Partner Councils.

We suggest the following operational components for the **Joint Committee**.

- Administering Authority: Waikato District Council
- Membership:
 - 2 x Waikato District Councillors + 1 alternate (subject to ward boundary considerations),
 - 2 x Waikato Regional Councillors + 1 alternate,
 - 2 – 4 Iwi / hapū representatives
- Chair: to be appointed by JC members, consider option of appointing co-chairs (one Iwi / hapū representative, one Councillor)
- All JC members to be remunerated in accordance with standard Council processes, with the cost of remunerating Iwi / hapū representatives shared equally between WRC and WDC.
- Delegated Authority: Specific functions to be included and confirmed in a term of reference, but may include guiding and providing oversight for the key components of resilience planning projects including:

²¹ Appointed under clause 30 of Schedule 7 of the Local Government Act 2002

- Receive scoping report(s) and directing resilience and adaptive management planning efforts in the Waikato District
- Receiving technical reports (hazard / risk / values etc)
- Guiding communication and engagement activities
- Appointing and observing community panel members
- Receiving recommendations from community panel(s) for adaptive management plan development
- Guiding the development of adaptive management plan(s) for priority communities in the Waikato District – Raglan and Port Waikato first.
- Considering and recommending to WDC and WRC draft adaptive management plan(s) for public notification.
- Considering comments and submissions on the draft plan(s).
- Considering and recommending a final adaptive management plan to WDC and WRC for approval.

8.4 Technical Advisory Group

We recommend the formation of a Technical Advisory Group (“TAG”) to support the Waikato District adaptive management planning programme. The TAG provides technical advice and guidance, including through independent technical experts as required, to both the Joint Committee and the community panel/ reference group. We recommend, that the TAG group has representatives from the Partner Councils. The TAG will require their own terms of reference to provide clarity on the group’s purpose, process and outcomes.

See **Appendix Four** for the terms of reference of the Technical Advisory Group Port Waikato Resilience Group as an example.

See **Appendix Five** for an example of the Port Waikato Resilience Group terms of reference.

8.5 Community Engagement

We recommend exploring two options for community engagement. The options have a varying level of community engagement and volunteer commitment as well as administrative support requirements. The ultimate decision could be made by Councillors or by the Joint Committee. *Further discussion with WDC/WRC Councillors is required on this recommendation.*

8.5.1 Option A: Community Panel

A **community panel** could be set up for each of the Raglan and Port Waikato communities. A community panel is strongly community-led and highly collaborative approach to adaptive management planning. In this model, the community panel have almost high autonomy in the design of the process, including scope and pace. This extends to technical reports prepared to support the panel process, which are not published/released until endorsed by the Panel.

The Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Panel²² is an example of this approach. This panel developed recommendations for Council to consider and implement. The panel were supported to explore and identify community values, natural hazards risks and possible response options, with support from and access to technical expertise both within and independent of the Partner Councils. The panel led the process of engaging with the wider community and captured their process and outcomes in a recommendations report.

8.5.1.1 Membership configuration

Membership of the Community Panel will be confirmed with the Partner Councils, tangata whenua and key stakeholders, but it is anticipated that it will be formed by an appropriate mix of community members, iwi / hapū and interested parties. Membership configuration for each community panel could be as follows:

Panel Members	Observer Participants	Support Roles
Tangata Whenua (4)	Joint Committee Members (1 - 2)	Independent Chair (1)
Community (3 - 4)		Facilitator (1 - 2)
Recreational Interests (1)		Technical Advisory Group (6)
Businesses (1)		Panel Secretary (1)
NZTA / Lifelines (1)		
Department of Conservation (1)		
Others (TBC)		

²²<https://wharekawacoast2120.hauraki-dc.govt.nz/wp-content/uploads/2022/08/Community-Panel-Recommendation-Report-Jul22.pdf>

8.5.2 Option B: Community reference groups

The second option for community engagement is to set up a **Community Reference Group (“CRG”)** for each of the Raglan and Port Waikato communities. This group could be chaired by an appointed councillor.

We envisage that the CRG will operate as a sounding board to test ideas, thinking and gain feedback, rather than the more involved, community panel process described above.

With a CRG format, we are seeking to maximise the benefits of the panel process (information sharing, relationship and trust building, high degree of ownership and buy-in), while reducing burden on community member’s time and costs. This will require further design (including with CRG members) to ensure that the benefits of the panel process are not lost.

Membership of the CRG will be confirmed with the Partner Councils, tangata whenua and key stakeholders, but it is anticipated that it will be formed by an appropriate mix of community members, iwi / hapū and interested parties, similar to the membership composition suggested for the Community Panel. We consider that involvement on the CRG would benefit from an initial induction session for the group where hazards are explained, and a term of reference confirmed which outlines the behaviour and expectations of the group.

A focus group approach, such as that used in the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project could also be effective in the Waikato District. This approach could see sub-groups formed with the CRG with a specific topic of focus, with a view to reporting back to the wider CRG.

8.5.2.1 Honorarium

We recommend community members are offered an honorarium²³ for their time on either the Community Panel or CRG. We consider that this adds formality to the process, recognises the time being put in by Community Panel or CRG members, offsets costs (e.g., travel) for participation, and in our view can help to hold a process like this together with consistent membership through to conclusion. We recommend checking if WRC or WDC have an existing policy around honorarium, and if so, applying this policy to future community engagement.

²³ An honorarium means an amount that a person receives for providing services that is paid at a rate that is less than the market rate for providing the services; and is an amount for which, in the normal course, no payment is fixed for the services provided. Honoraria are liable for tax as they are classed as schedular payments and as such the organisation must deduct as part of PAYE. Source: <https://www.nzppa.co.nz/blog/volunteers-and-honoraria-payments/>

The following outlines other projects we have been involved in that include an honorarium:

Wharekawa Coast 2120

In the Wharekawa Coast 2120 project, the value of the honorarium was determined by the Joint Working Party and was offered to each panel member who was not otherwise remunerated for their attendance (i.e., where they were attending as an employee of their representative organisation). The honorarium was paid by HDC direct to panel members who elected to be paid.

Wording within the terms of reference stated: *"c) Unless a Panel member is otherwise remunerated for their attendance at panel meetings (i.e. because they are attending as an employee of the organisation they are there to represent), or opts out, all full voting members shall receive an honorarium per meeting attended. The value of the honorarium (and any subsequent adjustments as may be required) shall be determined by the Joint Working Party. No additional reimbursement shall be given for mileage or travel to attend workshops."*

Gisborne District Council – Freshwater Advisory Group 2023

The purpose of this group is to assist Council in its review of the Regional Freshwater Plan and the Waipaoa Catchment Plan.

Members of the 2023 Freshwater Advisory Group will be paid a meeting fee of \$225 for each morning session (covering the Regional Freshwater Plan) and \$150 for each afternoon session attended (which covers the Waipaoa Catchment Plan). Some attendees will only attend the morning session. The meeting fee is paid based on attendance. This fee covers preparation time, including reading over prepared documents and liaising with Council staff with pre-meeting questions. Morning tea and lunch will be provided. The cost of travel by car within region will be reimbursed but not flights.

Each member will be given a copy of an IRD 330C 'Tax rate notification for contractors' form and an internal GDC 'Request for Creditor Approval' to set up the ability for members to invoice the Council after each meeting attended.

8.6 Recommended Adaptive Management Planning Project Structure

In broad terms, we recommend using a similar project structure as was used in the Wharekawa Coast project for adaptive management planning in the Waikato District.

This would see the formation of a TAG and Joint Committee. The suggested key change from Wharekawa process (as discussed previously) would be if WDC/ WRC decide to go with a Community Reference Group rather than a Community Panel. There needs to be further discussion with WDC / WRC Councillors about the CRG or Community Panel approach. **Figure 12** presents this proposed project structure.

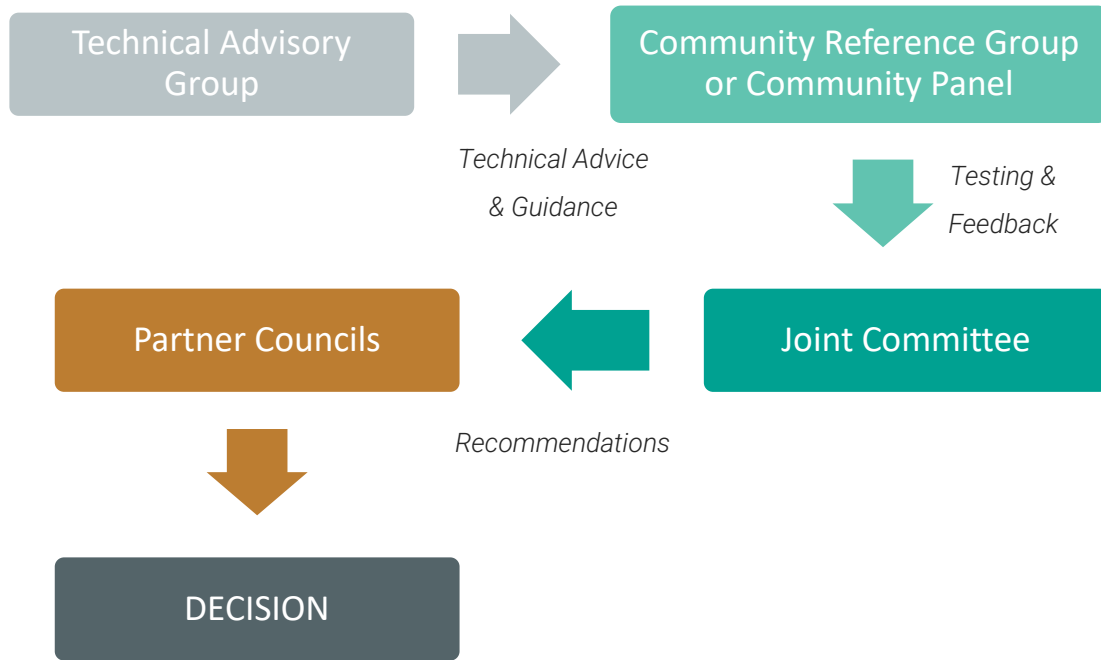


Figure 12 Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Planning Project Structure

8.6.1 Proposed project process

Table 4 below provides an outline of the proposed project steps for adaptive management planning in the Waikato District. This process identifies:

- The project phase (according to the MfE 10-step decision cycle);
- The project actions;
- Who would be involved/responsible for that step; and
- The intended outcome from each step of the process.

This process is based on our recommended approach of forming a Joint Committee and would see the project progressed as far as step seven on the MfE decision cycle. We consider that this process provides a good balance between collaborative approaches and process efficiency. Step eight is implementation of the adaptive management plan. Once the recommendations have been made to the Joint Committee, they would then pass this on to WDC/ WRC to develop an implementation plan.

Table 4 Proposed Waikato District Adaptive Management Planning Process

(TAG – Technical Advisory Group; Comm – Community panel or community reference group; JC – Joint Committee)

Project Phase	Project Action	Who?	Outcomes sought
What is happening?	Understanding Natural Hazards and climate change– identify in scope and out of scope.	TAG	Long list of natural hazards identified in project area.
	Hazards in scope confirmed and background information on hazards sourced.	TAG + Comm	Comm informed about the hazards in the scope of the project and reason why they have been chosen.
	Site visit of project area.	TAG + Comm + JC	All are familiar with the extent of the project area and can observe issues on the ground.
What matters most?	Identify community values	TAG + Comm	Community values of the project area identified.
	Goal setting – what do we want to achieve	TAG + Comm	Community goals within the project area in relation to natural hazards in scope are identified.
	Natural Hazard Risk Assessments and Social Impact Assessments	TAG	Risks of natural hazards in scope of the project and their impacts are understood. Impacts of natural hazards on the community are understood.
What can we do about it?	Options to respond to natural hazards identified.	TAG	Options for addressing natural hazard risks are identified. Long list, nothing off the table.
	Success criteria for short-listing options confirmed	TAG + Comm	Success criteria are developed to identify viable options.
	Options assessed and preferred options formed into pathways	TAG	Options assessed against agreed criteria to determine options suitable in response to natural hazard risks over short, medium and long term. Logical pathways of options are developed
	Preferred options tested	TAG + Comm	Pathways are tested with the CRG to confirm nothing is missing/ everything makes sense.
	Options assessment criteria identified	TAG	MCA criteria developed
What are we going to do?	Preferred pathways confirmed	TAG + Comm	Preferred pathways are identified using MCA analysis
	Adaptive management planning thresholds developed	TAG + Comm	Adaptive management planning thresholds describing the situations the community wants to avoid are developed.
	Signals and triggers to inform thresholds identified	TAG	Signals (early warnings) and triggers (decision points) are developed to inform adaptive management planning pathways.
How can we implement the strategy?	Implementation Plan developed	TAG	Implementation Plan is developed to give effect to all actions.

9 Next steps

This report intends to assist WDC and WRC to design the approach for long term adaptive management planning for natural hazards using the Dynamic Adaptive Pathway Planning (“DAPP”) methodology in the Waikato District.

We have recommended a methodology for implementing DAPP in the Waikato District, initially focusing on Raglan and Port Waikato concurrently. The governance structure recommended is like that of the Clifton to Tangoio Coastal Hazards Strategy 2120. Further discussion is needed with WDC and WRC about the level of community engagement in the project. (e.g community panel or community reference group).

The recommendations developed are based on the authors experiences, feedback from WDC / WRC Council officers and Councillors. They are yet to be tested with tangata whenua and community members. We consider that co-designing an approach presents good opportunities for process refinement before commencing work.

APPENDICES



APPENDIX ONE: SUMMARY DESCRIPTION OF HAZARDS AND HAZARD AREAS IN WAIKATO DISTRICT PLAN¹

The following hazard information has been sourced from the 2020 Section 32 report for the proposed Waikato District Plan – Stage two.

Flood Plain Management Area

The Flood Plain Management Area is the 1% Annual Exceedance Probability (AEP) floodplain, and is identified through both 1D and 2D modelling, depending on the level of information available. 2D modelling is only available adjacent to the main stem of the Waikato River between Horotiu and Ohinewai and a small length of the Waipa River from Saubrey Road to the confluence in Ngaruawahia. The 1D modelling extends south from Saubrey Road to the Waikato district boundary and North from Ohinewai to Port Waikato.

An allowance for the projected effects of climate change has been included in the 2D flood modelling (Horotiu to Ohinewai).

Flood Ponding Area

Flood Ponding Areas are areas of land that experience floodwater ponding in a 1% AEP rainfall event. Only two Flood Ponding Areas have been specifically identified on the planning maps. One of the areas is located in the southern part of Huntly adjacent to the eastern bank of the Waikato River and the other is in Huntly West adjacent to Lake Waahi and Lake Puketirini.

High Risk Flood Area

High Flood Risk Areas have also been identified as areas within the Flood Plain Management Area where the depth of flood water in a 1% AEP flood event exceeds 1 metre and the speed of flood water exceeds 2 metres per second as required by the WRPS. These areas are considered to pose a high level of risk in terms of the potential for loss of life, injury or serious damage to property.

Defended Area (Residual Risk Area)

Defended Areas are areas of land that would be at risk from flooding during a 1% AEP flood event if it were not for a structural defence such as a stopbank. These areas are generally located along the length of the Waikato River from the southern boundary of Huntly township to Otaua in the northern part of the district.

¹<https://www.waikatodistrict.govt.nz/your-council/plans-policies-and-bylaws/plans/waikato-district-plan/district-plan-review/stage-1/section-32-reports/natural-hazards-and-climate-change>

High Risk Coastal Hazard (Erosion) Area and High Risk Coastal Hazard (Inundation) Area

The High Risk Coastal Hazard (Erosion) Area and High Risk Coastal Hazard (Inundation) Area overlays identify land where there is significant risk from either coastal erosion or coastal inundation with existing sea level and coastal processes.

Coastal Sensitivity Area (Erosion) and Coastal Sensitivity Area (Inundation)

The Coastal Sensitivity Area (Erosion) and Coastal Sensitivity Area (Inundation) overlays identify land that is potentially vulnerable to either coastal erosion or coastal inundation over a 100 year period to 2120, assuming a sea level rise of 1.0 metre due to the projected effects of climate change.

Mine Subsidence Risk Area

The Mine Subsidence Risk Area identifies land in Huntly East that is currently at risk of subsidence due to historic underground coal mining activities and the subsequent closure and refilling of the Huntly East underground mine.

Liquefaction

Liquefaction areas have not been identified on the plan maps, however additional assessment matters have been included in some subdivision and land use rules which may require a liquefaction assessment to be carried out before subdivision or development takes place.

Slope Instability

Areas of slope instability have also not been identified on the planning maps. To comprehensively identify these areas over the entire district is not practical given the size of the district and the changing circumstances in which slope instability occurs (often after high rainfall or seismic events). Therefore, a set of policies have been developed and assessment matters included in relevant rules to ensure assessment of this hazard occurs before subdivision or development takes place.

Wind and Seismic Loading

Wind and seismic loadings are controlled by the council under the Building Act 2004. The risk of fire hazard is controlled by the Waikato Regional Council, the Department of Conservation and the Waikato District Council through legislation other than the Act, using both regulation and by increasing public awareness through information.

APPENDIX TWO

**Wharekawa Coast 2120
Community Panel Terms of
Reference**



FINAL Terms of Reference

– Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Advisory Panel

This Terms of Reference was confirmed by unanimous decision of the Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Panel at their meeting on 5 May 2020

1. Background/Context

- 1.1. Hauraki District Council (“HDC”) is preparing a community plan for the Kaiāua Pūkorokoro / Miranda coastal area (“Wharekawa Coast 2120”) situated on the western side of the Firth of Thames.
- 1.2. The project is about the Wharekawa Coast communities coming together to define their path for the future, rather than leaving it to chance. It will provide future direction, while retaining the ability to be adaptive to an uncertain future. Regular reviews will ensure that the plan continues to deliver desired outcomes.
- 1.3. Wharekawa Coast 2120 will look at a wide range of issues around the coast, to provide for a resilient and prosperous future, with a particular focus on responding to climate change and natural hazards and the long-term future planning of communities and land use:
- 1.4. This Community Advisory Panel is being established as the key component of a collaborative process to develop Wharekawa Coast 2120. The Panel will consider a broad range of issue and, with technical support and advice, develop recommendations to the HDC and Waikato Regional Council that will inform the shape, content and direction of Wharekawa Coast 2120.

2. Name and Status

- 2.1. The Community Advisory panel shall be known as the Wharekawa Coast 2120 Community Advisory Panel (“**the Panel**”).
- 2.2. The Panel is an informal entity established by agreement of its members.
- 2.3. The purpose of the Panel is to provide informed recommendations to the Hauraki District Council, Waikato Regional Council and Iwi, through a Joint Working Party, on the following matters:
 - a) Community values and aspirations;
 - b) The potential impacts of climate change and natural hazards risks;
 - c) Long-term adaptive pathways to respond to those risks; and
 - d) Key actions for achieving community aspirations.

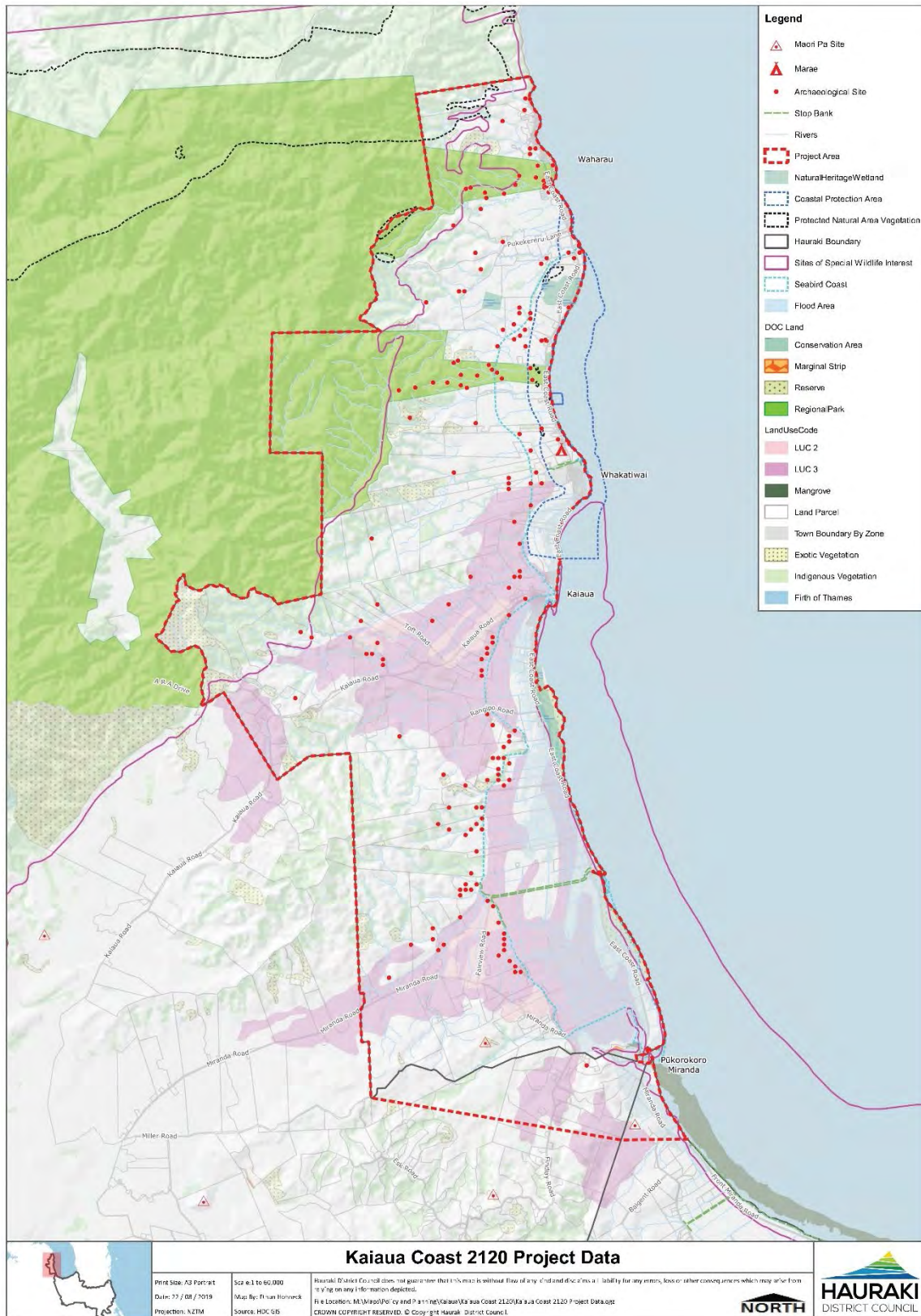
2.4. The specific function of the Panel is to provide the Joint Working Party with input, advice and recommendations on the following matters:

- a) Facilitating engagement with the broader community, affected persons and other stakeholders in relation to the community's values, aspirations and goals and their priorities.
- b) The development of hazard response options (using an adaptive pathways approach) to respond to information provided on natural hazards risks and the effects of climate change. The range of options might include:
 - i. Doing Nothing;
 - ii. Hard Engineering solutions;
 - iii. Soft engineering solutions (e.g. beach re-nourishment, beach crest stabilisation);
 - iv. Retreat, including identification of alternative building sites and land purchase;
 - v. Emergency Management planning;
 - vi. District and Regional Plan provisions; and
 - vii. Relevant internal Council policies.
- c) Facilitating engagement with the broader community, affected persons and other stakeholders in relation to the risks posed by natural hazards and the effects of climate change and the associated proposed hazard response options.
- d) Open, objective and unbiased participation in a facilitated decision-making process to select preferred natural hazards response options.
- e) The determination of a preferred option(s) or series of natural hazards response options.
- f) The development of long-term community planning outcomes that take into account community values and aspirations and the impact of natural hazards;
- g) The preparation and delivery of reasoned recommendations to the Joint Working Party on the above matters.

3. Membership

3.1. A single panel shall be formed covering the area from Pūkorokoro/Miranda in the south to Waharau in north as indicated by Figure 1 below.

FIGURE 1: PROJECT AREA



3.2. Table 1 below outlines the membership distribution of the Panel.

TABLE 1: COMMUNITY ADVISORY PANEL MEMBERSHIP

Panel Members	Support Roles	Observers
Chair/co-chairs (up to 2)	Cultural Advisor (1)	Observers – Joint Working Party Members
Community panel members comprising those from Urban and Rural settlements, local business and recreation (up to 6)	Facilitator (2)	
Mana Whenua (3)	Panel Administrator (1)	
Network utility representative (1)	Technical Advisory Group / Independent Advisors	
Rural Support Trust (1)		
Community Services (1)		
Department of Conservation (1)		

4. Role Descriptions

- 4.1. **Panel Members:** Representative positions with full voting and speaking rights and participation in scoring and recommendations. A quorum of 50% of Panel Members is required for the Panel to pass any resolutions.
- 4.2. **Observers:** Present to observe and offer advice and opinions when these are requested by or through the Chair/Co-chairs. Speaking rights may be granted upon request, at the discretion of the Chair/Co-chairs. No voting rights
- 4.3. **Chair/Co-chairs:** Responsible for the efficient and fair operation of the meeting and ensuring the Terms of Reference are followed and adhered to. Responsible for handling all media enquiries regarding the work of the Panel. No voting rights, unless the position is filled by an existing panel member. Full speaking rights. The participating Councils see significant value from implementing Co-chair roles of the Panel which will share responsibility for the overall functioning of panel meeting. The Councils have a strong desire for one of the Co-chair roles to be filled by a mana whenua member of the Panel as this will bring a co-governance approach to the management of the Panel. In the event that a mana whenua Co-chair is not appointed by the Panel, the participating Councils encourage the appointment of a Deputy Chair from within the Panel.
- 4.4. **Cultural Advisor:** Responsible for ensuring tikanga is respected and followed throughout the process. Provides advice and guidance on the consideration of cultural values and impacts to ensure that the interpretation of iwi interests are appropriately captured and acknowledged. Assists Mana Whenua members as may be necessary to ensure quality relationships are developed throughout the Wharekawa Coast 2120 community plan process. No voting rights, unless the position is filled by an existing

panel member. Full speaking rights. The participating Councils are open to the role of cultural advisor to the Panel being filled from within the Panel, or as a shared role between a panel member and Hauraki District Council's Takawaenga (Iwi and Māori Liaison Officer) if the Panel consider this is appropriate.

- 4.5. **Facilitators:** Responsible for the overall management of each workshop, including managing how the Panel works and interacts, resolving conflicts, leading debates, seeking consensus, and ensuring voting members are given the full opportunity to participate. Ultimately responsible for securing the necessary outcomes from each Panel workshop in an efficient, fair, and transparent manner. Responsible for the development of a final report for each Panel, outlining the process taken and resolutions reached. No voting rights. Full speaking rights.
- 4.6. **Technical Advisory Group / Independent Technical Advisors:** Provides technical support and expertise to the Panel when this is requested through the Chair/Co-chairs. No voting rights. Speaking rights may be granted upon request, at the discretion of the Chair/Co-chairs.
- 4.7. **Panel Administrator:** Responsible for the organisation and logistics associated with the successful operation of each Panel workshop. Records the minutes, actions and resolutions from each workshop. Manages communications with all Panel members outside of each workshop. No voting rights. Speaking rights may be granted upon request, at the discretion of the Chair/Co-chairs.

5. Member attitudes and protocol for collaborative deliberation

- 5.1. The Panel represents a community-driven collaborative stakeholder process with the aim of providing the Joint Working Party with consensus advice and recommendations on a long-term approach to build resilience to natural hazards on the Wharekawa Coast over the next 100 years, and the long term aspirations for the communities, mana whenua, businesses and other stakeholders along this coast.
- 5.2. For this process to be successful, members of the Panel will need to have the ability to explore, consider and deliberate on options and recommendations with an open mind, taking into account diverse views and interests (rather than simply advocating for a particular point of view).
- 5.3. The following collaborative protocol is to be followed by all Panel members, observers and support roles:
- a) Panel members will participate co-operatively for the "long term benefit" of the region as a whole.

- b) All Panel members agree to act in good faith. This means that members must commit to open, honest, constructive, robust, respectful and collaborative deliberations. To facilitate this, the Chatham House rule¹ will apply.
- c) Contributions made within the Panel will be "without prejudice". That is, nothing said within the group may be used in a subsequent planning or legal process except for any recommendations and agreements reached by the group.
- d) Panel members agree to show respect for other members' views when communicating with their wider networks.
- e) Panel members agree to refrain from discussion and debate through media channels (i.e. newspapers, radio, television, and social media²).
- f) Any public statement regarding advice or recommendations made by the Panel are to be agreed by the Panel and made through the Chair/Co-chairs. This also applies to researchers, council staff and others who may attend in support of Panel meetings. The Project Manager is available to review any statements before they are approved by the Panel for public release.
- g) Consensus shall be strived for in all decisions made by Panel Members and is defined as every member (i.e. 100%) of the group being in agreement.
- h) Where 100% consensus cannot be reached on a specific piece of advice or a recommendation, the reasons for disagreement will be noted, any alternatives defined, and the reasons for members positions on the alternatives recorded.
- i) When the Panel reaches a decision, members will be expected to acknowledge that decision in subsequent public discussion, or presentation to the Council.
- j) If a meeting is missed by a member, members will not be able to "re-litigate" a piece of consensus advice or recommendation at a later time.
- k) Any recommendations made by the Panel must also take account of the requirements of the Local Government Act, New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement and other relevant legislation.

5.4. Members are required to declare any actual or perceived interests to the full Community Panel. The Chair/Co-chairs will then determine whether or not the interest represents a conflict, and if so, what action will be taken.

6. Operational Protocols

6.1. The following protocols shall apply to the operation of the Panel:

¹ When a meeting, or part thereof, is held under the Chatham House Rule, participants are free to use the information received, but neither the identity nor the affiliation of the speaker(s), nor that of any other participant, may be revealed.

² This does not preclude the objective and impartial use of social media to facilitate engagement with the broader community, affected persons and other stakeholders in relation to the risks posed by coastal hazards and the associated coastal hazard response options.

- a) The schedule of agreed meetings is attached as **Appendix 1** to these terms of reference.
- b) Panel Members are expected to commit to the agreed schedule of meetings in **Appendix 1** and make every effort to attend all meetings. While it is anticipated that some Panel Members will miss certain meetings through circumstances beyond their control, if a significant number of meetings are not attended by a Panel Member then at the discretion of the Chair/Co-chairs their membership may be reviewed and a reappointment process may be triggered.
- c) Unless a Panel member is otherwise remunerated for their attendance at panel meetings (i.e. because they are attending as an employee of the organisation they are there to represent), or opts out, all full voting members shall receive an honorarium per meeting attended. The value of the honorarium (and any subsequent adjustments as may be required) shall be determined by the Joint Working Party. No additional reimbursement shall be given for mileage or travel to attend workshops.
- d) A regular public reporting forum and newsletter or similar mechanism should be adopted by the Panel to ensure the wider public are kept informed of their activities.
- e) Panel meetings are not open to the public; however, the Chair/Co-chairs can invite people such as relevant experts and interested parties to specific meetings, and open certain meetings to the public and media representatives where it is considered appropriate. Elected members of the participating Councils are welcome to attend all meetings.
- f) The participating Councils will be responsible for providing all the necessary support for the effective functioning of the group including the provisions of meeting venues, refreshments, and staff support for the preparation of agendas, minutes, communications etc.
- g) Panel Members may not appoint alternates, or vote by proxy.
- h) Where a Panel Member is no longer available to continue participation for any reason, a replacement will be nominated by the relevant agency, group or community, to be accepted at the discretion of the Chair/Co-chairs.
- i) Where a Panel Member or Observer or any other party present at a meeting deliberately or otherwise breaches the requirements and expectations of their participation and attendance at Panel Meetings, as set out in this Terms of Reference, the Chair/Co-chairs may, at their sole discretion, recommend to the Joint Working Party that the person is removed. If this recommendation is confirmed by the Joint Working Party, the person in question shall immediately cease to be a member of the Panel or in the case they are not a Panel Member, shall be barred from attending future Panel meetings.

- j) Notes will be taken of all meetings. Notes will not record meeting conversations verbatim, but will provide an overall summary of the issues covered and the conclusions/decisions reached. These notes will be a public record.
- k) None of the matters in this terms of reference replaces, limits or restricts the individual decision-making of the participating Councils and organisations involved; the statutory responsibilities and obligations of the Councils for the implementation of plans and policies, including consent processing, monitoring, enforcement and compliance; or the ability to collaborate or work together in ways not defined in this terms of reference.

7. Resources

7.1. At each meeting, the Panel will have access to a Technical Advisory Group ("TAG") formed by senior staff from each of the Partner Councils. Independent technical advisors may also be engaged to assist with supporting the Panel, which may include expertise from the following areas:

- Cultural expertise
- Social impact assessment
- Coastal process science and engineering
- Landscape
- Legal
- Economics
- Planning

7.2. Attendance at specific meetings by experts shall be at the discretion of the Chair/Co-chairs.

8. Recommendations and Reporting

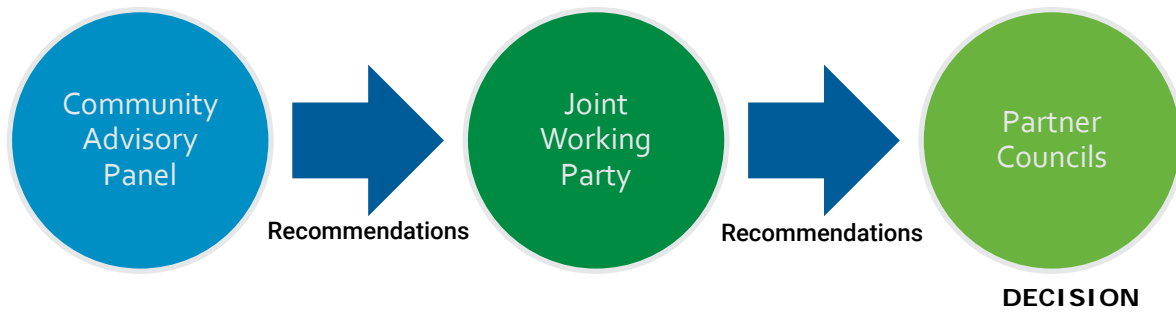
8.1. At the conclusion of their process, the Panel will present a final report to the Joint Working Party outlining the process they have taken and a final set of recommendations to underpin Wharekawa Coast 2120.

8.2. The Joint Working Party shall, in good faith, consider the report and recommendations and may seek clarification and/or amendments from the Panel before formally receiving the report.

8.3. The Joint Working Party shall submit the final Panel report to the participating Councils with a formal recommendation.

8.4. This process is outlined in **Figure 2** below.

FIGURE 2: FUNCTIONAL RELATIONSHIPS



Appendix 1- Agreed Meeting Schedule

Meeting Schedule being reviewed in light of Covid-19 pandemic.

Agreed Meeting Schedule to be incorporated once finalised.

APPENDIX THREE

Feedback from Councillors - 30th May 2023



APPENDIX TWO: FEEDBACK FROM WDC/ WRC COUNCILLORS FROM WORKSHOP HELD 30TH MAY 2023

1.1 Priority communities

During the workshop session, WDC Councillors were asked the following questions.

1. *What are you hearing from communities about natural hazards? Where is the highest level of concern?*
2. *Considering hazards in scope for this work (see Section 2.2 above), what are your views on top priority communities or assets for adaptive planning?*

Responses received included:

- River flooding:
 - Old SH1 and Taupiri River
 - Miranda Coast
 - Port Waikato - River flooding is starting to really impact. Port Waikato is at end of Waikato – it comes in, then comes out
 - History of river flooding Huntly and Ngāruawāhia.
- Port Waikato has a matrix of hazards and is experiencing hazards and land instability that are affecting houses, roads, and access ways.
- To maintain progress, a proactive approach is needed instead of reacting to problems as they occur.
- Complexity of hill side around the Port Waikato
- Stop bank inundation
- Gully systems: Soil instability in these areas. Causes a lot of landslides. Many houses are built in this area to get a view. Torrential rain is causing issues.
- Raglan:
 - Currently going through an erosion phase. The community is particularly vulnerable when high tide events and low pressures systems coincide.
 - The vulnerability of the harbour to wind events, which push water into it during high tide, poses a significant risk of causing extensive damage.
- The Waipa River is an uncontrolled river and poses a high risk in the northern area. Huntly experienced high water levels in 1998, and photos of the event have recently emerged. Boat access is necessary in some areas, and there are houses built in flood plains. Sandbagging has been used in newer houses as a precautionary measure.

- Concerns around marae that are close to the river. There are a number of marae along the plains next to the river. During Cyclone Gabrielle, flooding came from down the hill into marae, not from rising water.
- There are concerns regarding Lake Taupō and its impact on the Waikato River, which extends beyond the immediate area of concern.

Feedback from WRC Councillor Pamela Storey

Cr. Storey acknowledged the question of priority community raises significant questions and highlights the need to consider other areas in the region facing similar challenges. WRC have a focus on achieving efficiency and effectiveness by working together as a region. Identifying all the areas across the Waikato region that require efforts and resources is crucial, and various mapping tools are available for this purpose. The planning process and decisions made will impact local communities. The issue of how to resource these efforts, including funding, is being addressed, with discussions initiated and awaiting decisions from the central government, particularly the Climate Adaptation Act (CAA) framework. While initial discussions are valuable, Cr. Storey believes the emphasis should be placed on aligning with central government decisions e.g CAA to refine the thought process.

1.2 Project Phasing

Based on feedback from both WDC and WRC Councillors, we recommend initiating adaptive management planning at Raglan and Port Waikato concurrently as soon as possible.

During the 30th of May 2023 WDC Councillor workshop, Councillors were asked about their thoughts on the timing of the programme considering the range of natural hazard issues existing in the district and the upcoming significant changes to the resource management system. Of note was the eventual introduction of a core piece of legislation – Climate Adaptation Act (CAA) which is still being drafted and expected to be a Bill towards the end of 2023.

Councillors provided the following feedback:

- It was suggested to wait for government or CAA guidance to avoid misleading communities and eroding trust if new national guidance emerges soon after developing a community response.
- Short-term resilience preparation is important, with a focus on improving roading infrastructure and maintaining pressure on these issues.
- Taking immediate action is advocated, considering the costs of inaction and potential future expenses associated with delays.
- A tiered approach is proposed, prioritising urgent matters like Port Waikato and addressing high-risk areas first, such as Raglan.

- It was mentioned that there was not a lot of action from the recommendations in the 2014 and there is a sense of responsibility towards Port Waikato.
- The model of community engagement in Raglan will help to guide engagement with other communities in the district.
- A regional perspective is anticipated
- It was noted Māori take an 'ultra-long-term' focus and that planning timeframes across the council need to be aligned and consider this perspective.
- The suggestion was made to organise a response firstly within WDC, and then involve the community. There should be an emphasis of working collaboratively with community boards.
- Concerns were raised about conflicting goals for resilience within the community. This can lead to conflicting community expectations and competing groups.

APPENDIX FOUR

**Terms of Reference for Technical
Advisory Group – Port Waikato
Resilience Group**



Terms of Reference (DRAFT)

Port Waikato Community Resilience Strategy Technical Advisory Group

1. Purpose

- 1.1. This Terms of Reference describes the membership, role, function and administration of the Technical Advisory Group (“**TAG**”) formed for the Port Waikato Community Resilience Strategy (“**PWCRS**”).
- 1.2. This document also confirms the agreed cost sharing arrangements (including in-kind costs) between the Waikato District Council and Waikato Regional Council (“**the Councils**”) for the development of PWCRS.

2. Project context

- 2.1. The PWCRS is being prepared for the Port Waikato coastal area, situated on the west coast of the North Island, on the south bank of the Waikato River at its outflow (“**Port Waikato**”). This area includes the Sunset Beach community.
- 2.2. The PWCRS seeks to co-design an adaptive management plan for natural hazards at Port Waikato with the community and other key stakeholders, aided by an experienced external facilitator. The plan will consider short, medium and long term options as well as trigger points for particular actions.
- 2.3. The PWCRS will be used to inform decision making on other Port Waikato activities including the management of public assets and Civil Defence and Emergency Management readiness and recovery is expected to improve as a result of this work.
- 2.4. A Port Waikato Resilience Group (“**PWRG**”) has been formed with members of the Port Waikato Community.
- 2.5. The PWRG has developed and confirmed its own terms of reference, and has identified a series of deliverables within its scope, which include the following:
 - 2.5.1. A ‘Port Waikato Natural Hazards Planning Co-design Process Report’ that will set out the process the PWRG will undertake to achieve its objectives. The Co-design report will be presented to the Waikato District Council for consideration and adoption. (note WRC for info)
 - 2.5.2. A ‘PRWC Action Plan’, for responding to immediate natural hazards risks and other community matters in the short term.
 - 2.5.3. A ‘Sunset Beach Erosion Response Plan’, that will:
 - a. Objectively identify and assess options, and select a preferred option, for the short term slowing / halting of erosion losses at Sunset Beach to mitigate further serious damage to infrastructure and property from coastal erosion at Port Waikato while a long-term plan is developed;
 - b. Ensure the option that is selected remains compatible with an adaptive planning approach; and
 - c. Implement the selected option(s) within a reasonable timeframe.

2.5.4. A 'Port Waikato Resilience Strategy', that will:

- a. Summarise (with reference to appropriate technical information) the natural hazards risks faced by the Port Waikato Community in the short, medium and long term;
- b. Present recommended responses to those hazards risks;
- c. Follow the dynamic adaptive pathways planning approach for coastal hazards as set out in the Ministry for the Environment's guidance for local government¹; and
- d. Describe the process taken by the PWRG to arrive at its recommendations.

3. Membership

- 3.1. In general, TAG shall be formed by staff representatives from the Councils; however, independent and/or external appointments to TAG may be made by the agreement of the Councils.
- 3.2. The Councils may freely appoint members to the TAG at any time.
- 3.3. There shall be no upper or lower limit on the number of TAG members, except that the Councils shall seek to ensure that there is sufficient input to the TAG to cover the following areas of expertise:
 - i. Mātauranga Maori
 - ii. Resource Management and Planning
 - iii. Engineering / asset management
 - iv. Coastal Science
 - v. CDEM
 - vi. Hazard Risk Assessment/Management
 - vii. Communications and Engagement
- 3.4. The members of TAG shall appoint a Chair to run the meetings and set the agenda.
- 3.5. The members of TAG shall appoint an administrator to record and circulate agreed actions, organise logistics, and assist with task delivery.
- 3.6. The initial members of TAG shall be:

Waikato District Council: Jim Ebenhoh (Chair), Kurt Abbot, Anisha McPhee, plus admin staff member TBC

Waikato Regional Council: Alejandro Cifuentes, Rick Liefting, Phil Mourot, Whitney Mills

Facilitator: Simon Bendall

4. Meetings

- 4.1. Meetings shall generally be held at the Waikato District Council and by video conference.
- 4.2. Meetings shall generally be held every 4 weeks for the duration of the project, and generally at least 2 weeks ahead of each PWRG meeting, or as may be determined by the Councils.
- 4.3. The agenda for each meeting (and any relevant meeting materials) shall be circulated at least 3 working days before the meeting.

5. Functions

- 5.1. TAG's functions are to assist with the project management, technical support and delivery of the of PWCRS, including:
- i. Completing tasks and project work as directed by the Waikato District Council;
 - ii. Supporting the PWRG to achieve the deliverables defined in its terms of reference;
 - iii. Leading project engagement with the community and stakeholders;
 - iv. Providing technical information and support for the Waikato District Council councillors and senior managers to enable sound and informed decision making;
 - v. Facilitating information and knowledge exchange between the Councils; and
 - vi. Ensuring Council inputs and activities are integrated, aligned and complementary.
- 5.2. The Waikato District Council shall be responsible for administering the TAG including preparing and circulating agendas, confirming meeting dates and venues, taking and circulating minutes and providing a point of contact for TAG Members.

6. Cost sharing

- 6.1. Each Council shall be responsible for meeting their own costs for participating in the TAG.
- 6.2. The Waikato District Council shall be responsible for meeting the costs of engaging an external facilitator / advisor.
- 6.3. Cost sharing between the Partner Councils for all other project costs shall be determined and agreed on a case-by-case basis.

7. Review and Variation

- 7.1. On an annual basis, TAG shall undertake a review of these terms of reference to ensure they remain fit for purpose and effective.
- 7.2. Amendments to these Terms of Reference may only be made with the written approval of the Councils.

APPENDIX FIVE

Terms of Reference for Port Waikato Resilience Group



PORT WAIKATO COMMUNITY RESILIENCE STRATEGY

PORT WAIKATO RESILIENCE GROUP

Terms of Reference

This Terms of Reference was confirmed by unanimous decision of the Port Waikato Resilience Group at their meeting on 26 November 2020.

1. Name

- 1.1. The working group established and operating under this Terms of Reference shall be known as the Port Waikato Resilience PWRG (“PPWRG”).
- 1.2. The PWRG is an informal entity established by agreement of its members.

2. Purpose

- 2.1. The purpose of the PWRG is to form a partnership between Mana Whenua, the Port Waikato community, the Waikato District Council and Waikato Regional Council (“Partner Councils”), the Department of Conservation and other key stakeholders to develop pragmatic, realistic, and adaptive solutions to natural hazards risks for the Port Waikato Community in the short, medium and long term.

3. Objectives

- 3.1. The PWRG will measure success against the following objectives:
 - a. A positive productive working relationship is established between PWRG members.
 - b. Trust is established between the PPWRG members.
 - c. A plan is developed to respond to the immediate, short, medium and long term natural hazards risks faced by the Port Waikato community.
 - d. The Port Waikato community are:
 - informed about the risks they face from natural hazards in the short, medium and long term.
 - Engaged, understanding and supportive of the plan to respond to natural hazards risks.
 - Empowered and less anxious about future risks posed by natural hazards.

4. Deliverables

The PWRG will produce:

- 4.1. A '**Port Waikato Natural Hazards Planning Co-design Process Report**' that will set out the process the PWRG will undertake to achieve its objectives. The Co-design report will be presented to the Waikato District Council for consideration and adoption. (note WRC for info)
- 4.2. A '**PRWC Action Plan**', for responding to immediate natural hazards risks and other community matters in the short term.
- 4.3. A "**Sunset Beach Erosion Response Plan**", that will:
 - a. Objectively identify and assess options, and select a preferred option, for the short term slowing / halting of erosion losses at Sunset Beach to mitigate further serious damage to infrastructure and property from coastal erosion at Port Waikato while a long-term plan is developed;
 - b. Ensure the option that is selected remains compatible with an adaptive planning approach; and
 - c. Implement the selected option(s) within a reasonable timeframe
- 4.4. A '**Port Waikato Resilience Strategy**', that will:
 - a. Summarise (with reference to appropriate technical information) the natural hazards risks faced by the Port Waikato Community in the short, medium and long term;
 - b. Present recommended responses to those hazards risks;
 - c. Follow the dynamic adaptive pathways planning approach for coastal hazards as set out in the Ministry for the Environment's guidance for local government¹; and
 - d. Describe the process taken by the PWRG to arrive at its recommendations.

5. Membership

- 5.1. The PWRG shall be formed by the following member groups / organisations:
 - a. Port Waikato Community.
 - b. Ngāti Tahinga and Ngāti Karewa.

¹ Ministry for the Environment (2017). *Coastal hazards and climate change: Guidance for local government*. Publication reference number: ME 1341

- c. Waikato Tainui.
- d. Waikato District Council.
- e. Waikato Regional Council.
- f. Department of Conservation.

5.2. The individuals appointed to the PWRG by each member group / organisation are listed in **Attachment 1**.

6. Appointment of New Members

- 6.1. New or replacement members of the PWRG from the Port Waikato Community may be appointed at the discretion of the Chair.
- 6.2. A standing invitation remains in place for new / replacement members to be appointed by and at the sole discretion of Ngāti Tahinga and Ngāti Karewa.
- 6.3. A standing invitation remains in place for new / replacement members to be appointed by and at the sole discretion of Waikato Tainui.
- 6.4. New or replacement members of the PWRG from Waikato District Council, Waikato Regional Council and the Department of Conservation may be appointed by each organisation respectively, with notification to the Chair.

7. Role of PWRG Members

Port Waikato Community Members

- 7.1. Participants in the process as members of the community with local knowledge, relationships, and expertise. For the avoidance of doubt, community members are not participating as mandated representatives of Port Waikato.
- 7.2. Participants with full voting and speaking rights.

Ngāti Tahinga, Ngāti Karewa and Waikato Tainui

- 7.3. Participants in the process as members of Ngāti Tahinga, Ngāti Karewa and Waikato Tainui and as members of the community with local knowledge, relationships, and expertise.
- 7.4. Participants with full voting and speaking rights.

Partner Council and Department of Conservation Staff

- 7.5. Provide technical support and expertise to the PWRG when this is requested through the Chair.
- 7.6. Provide comment on matters related to statutory responsibilities under relevant legislation for each organisation.
- 7.7. Participants in an advisory capacity only with no voting rights. Full speaking rights.

8. Appointment of Chair / Deputy Chair

- 8.1. On the formation of the PWRG, the members shall by consensus agreement elect a Chair and Deputy Chair.
- 8.2. The Chair and Deputy Chair are to be selected from the members, or an independent may be appointed to either role.
- 8.3. In the event that an independent Chair or Deputy Chair is appointed, that person will act in all respects as an independent and neutral third party
- 8.4. The Chair and Deputy Chair shall be responsible for:
 - a. the efficient, fair and collaborative operation of the meeting.
 - b. ensuring the Terms of Reference are followed and adhered to.
 - c. handling all media enquiries regarding the work of the PWRG.
- 8.5. The Chair and Deputy Chair may vote as PWRG members only.
- 8.6. The individuals appointed as the Chair and Deputy Chair listed in **Attachment 1**.

9. Support Roles

- 9.1. On the formation of the PWRG, the members shall by consensus agreement appoint persons to the following Support Roles:
 - a. Administrator
 - b. Facilitator
 - c. Technology Advisor
- 9.2. The Administrator shall be responsible for:
 - a. The organisation and logistics associated with the successful operation of the PWRG.
 - b. Recording and distributing the minutes, actions and resolutions from each workshop.

- c. Managing communications related to logistics with all members outside of each workshop.
- 9.3. The Facilitator shall be responsible for:
- a. The overall management of each workshop, including managing how the PWRG works and interacts, resolving conflicts, leading debates, seeking consensus, supporting the Chair and Deputy Chair, and ensuring voting members are given the full opportunity to participate.
 - b. Securing the necessary outcomes from each PWRG meeting in an efficient, fair, and transparent manner.
- 9.4. The Technology Advisor shall be responsible for:
- a. Providing and operating the technology requirements to meet the needs of the PWRG.
- 9.5. Support Roles have not voting rights.
- 9.6. The individuals appointed to the Support Roles are listed in **Attachment 1**.

10. Observers

- 10.1. The Partner Councils may each appoint any number of elected representatives (Councillors) to participate in PWRG meetings.
- 10.2. Waikato District Council may also appoint a community board member to participate in PWRG meetings.
- 10.3. Observers are present to observe and offer advice and opinions and to communicate organisational aspirations, constraints and requirements, when these are requested by or through the Chair.
- 10.4. Observers have no voting rights.
- 10.5. The Councillors appointed as Observers are listed in **Attachment 1**.

11. PWRG Procedures

Apologies

- 11.1. Should a member be unable to attend a meeting, they must inform the Chair at least 24 hours prior to any meeting.
- 11.2. If the Chair and Deputy Chair cannot attend, the role of Chair may be delegated to an alternate member for that meeting.

Quorum

11.3. A quorum of five PWRG voting members is required.

Meeting dates, times, venue and notification

11.4. PWRG meetings will be held on a monthly basis or more or less as may be agreed by the members to ensure that the PWRG objectives are achieved.

11.5. All meetings of the PWRG shall be notified by the Administrator to PWRG Members, Support Roles and Observers with at least 5 working days' notice.

11.6. Meetings will be held at the Port Waikato Fire Station at 6pm – 8pm or at a venue and time agreed by the members.

11.7. Meetings may also be held virtually by prior arrangement.

Agendas

11.8. Meeting agendas, with attached meeting papers (if required) will be approved by the Chair and distributed at least five working days prior to the next scheduled meeting.

11.9. The Chair and Facilitator are responsible for arranging and circulating the agendas.

Minutes

11.10. Draft minutes of meetings of the PWRG are to be circulated to PWRG members no later than 5 working days following a meeting.

11.11. Draft minutes shall be reviewed and approved as draft by the Chair or Facilitator prior to circulation.

11.12. Once confirmed by the PWRG, minutes will be made available to the public.

Meeting Attendance

11.13. Attendance at PWRG meetings shall be open to PWRG Members, Support Roles and Observers only.

11.14. At the sole discretion of the Chair, members of the public, media, technical advisors and/or other persons may be invited to attend PWRG meetings.

12. Code of Conduct

12.1. All participants agree to act in good faith. This means committing to open, honest, constructive, robust, respectful and collaborative deliberations.

- 12.2. Chatham House Rules² will generally not apply, unless directed by the Chair that it will apply to any particular meeting, or part of a meeting.
- 12.3. Contributions made within the PWRG will be "without prejudice". That is, nothing said within the PWRG may be used in a subsequent planning or legal process except for the final recommendations and agreements reached and reported by the PWRG.
- 12.4. Participants agree to show respect for others views when communicating with their wider networks.
- 12.5. Participants agree to refrain from discussion and debate through media channels (i.e. newspapers, radio, television, and social media).
- 12.6. Any public statement regarding the PWRG's process, or advice or recommendations made by the PWRG, are to be agreed by the PWRG and made through the Chair.
- 12.7. Consensus shall be strived for in all decisions made by voting members of the PWRG and is defined as every voting member (i.e. 100%) of the PWRG being in agreement.
- 12.8. Where consensus cannot be reached on a specific piece of advice or a recommendation, the reasons for disagreement will be noted by the Facilitator, any alternatives defined, and the reasons for members positions on the alternatives recorded.
- 12.9. When the PWRG reaches a decision, participants will be expected to acknowledge that decision in subsequent public discussion, or presentation to the Partner Councils.
- 12.10. If a meeting is missed by a participant, they will not be entitled to "re-litigate" a piece of consensus advice or recommendation at a later time.
- 12.11. Participants are expected to commit to an agreed schedule of meetings and make every effort to attend all meetings. While it is anticipated that some will miss certain meetings through circumstances beyond their control, if a significant number of meetings are not attended then at the discretion of the Chair membership may be reviewed and a reappointment process may be triggered.
- 12.12. Where a participant deliberately or otherwise breaches the requirements and expectations of their participation on the PWRG, as set out in this Terms of Reference, the Chair may, at their sole discretion, recommend that the participant be removed. If this recommendation is confirmed by the PWRG, the participant in question shall immediately cease to be a member or participant of the PWRG.

² When a meeting, or part thereof, is held under the Chatham House Rule, participants are free to use the information received, but neither the identity nor the affiliation of the speaker(s), nor that of any other participant, may be revealed.

13. Conflicts of Interest

- 13.1. Participants are required to declare any actual or perceived interests to the PWRG. The Chair will then determine whether or not the interest represents a conflict, and if so, what action will be taken.

14. Media Protocol

- 14.1. Any approaches or requests by news media shall be directed as follows:
- a. **In relation to a specific property impacts by coastal hazards** – relevant landowner. For the avoidance of doubt, any landowner who is also a member of the PWRG is not prevented or restricted from discussing matters directly relevant to their property.
 - b. **In relation to the operations, recommendations and process of the PWRG** – Chair or Deputy Chair.
 - c. **In relation to Council functions and processes** – relevant Council media contact.
- 14.2. Any publications or media releases made by the PWRG or in relation to the work of the PWRG shall be approved by the Chair prior to release.

Communications

- 14.3. The usual form of communication for providing notices of meetings, circulating agendas and meeting notes shall be by email.
- 14.4. A collaborative wiki platform shall be established and maintained by the Technology Advisor for use by PWRG members as a single place to store and share information regarding the PWRG. The platform shall be available for use by PWRG members only and shall not be open to members of the public.
- 14.5. Following each PWRG meeting, the Chair shall prepare a brief summary for the next issue of the Port Report. The purpose of the summary is to maintain open communication with the Port Waikato Community on the work of the PWRG

15. Reporting

- 15.1. The Partner Councils shall, in good faith, consider all reports and recommendations prepared by the PWRG and may seek clarification and/or amendments from the PPWRG before formally receiving the report.

15.2. The Partner Councils shall ensure regular reporting to elected representatives.

16.Changes to Terms of Reference

This Terms of Reference may be changed by consensus agreement at any formal meeting of the PWRG when quorum requirements is met.

ATTACHMENT 1 – PORT WAIKATO RESILIENCE GROUP

Members	Confirmed Appointments
Port Waikato Community	Jade McCormack
	Ross Millen
	Jo Poland
	Leah Fry
	Malcolm Beattie
	Mike McCormack
	Melanie Gabriel
	Robyn Green
	Wayne Green
	Sylvia Dwen
	James Smith
	Brian Wadman
	Glenn Graham
	Chanel Brock
Ngāti Tahinga / Ngāti Karewa	Rereokeroa Shaw
	<i>To be confirmed</i>
Waikato Tainui	<i>To be confirmed</i>
	<i>To be confirmed</i>
Waikato District Council	Jim Ebenhoh
	Kurt Abbot
Onewhero-Tuakau Community Board	Kandi Ngataki
	Stephanie Henderson
Waikato Regional Council	Rick Liefing
	Alejandro Cifuentes
Department of Conservation	Dannika Tukua

Chair and Deputy Chair	Confirmed Appointment
Chair	Jade McCormack
Deputy Chair	Ross Millen

Support Roles	Confirmed Appointment
Administrator	Waikato District Council staff
Facilitator	Simon Bendall
Technology Advisor	Ross Millen

Observers	Confirmed Appointment
Waikato District Council	Cr Carolyn Eyre
Waikato Regional Council	Cr Pamela Storey

2020

March	Port Waikato Community Meetings scheduled to commence, delayed due to COVID-19.
July	Traverse Environmental engaged by WDC
September	PWRG meetings restart following change to COVID-19 restrictions.

2021

March	eCoast “An Overview of Coastal Processes and Drivers of Coastal Hazards: Port Waikato” Revision 1 (commissioned by WRC)
July	Hume Consulting Peer Review of eCoast “An Overview of Coastal Processes and Drivers of Coastal Hazards: Port Waikato” Revision 1
August	eCoast “An Overview of Coastal Processes and Drivers of Coastal Hazards: Port Waikato” Revision 2 eCoast “Port Waikato Sand Management Options” Report NBS Draft Sunset Beach Erosion Report
September	Hume Consulting Peer Review of eCoast and NBS Reports
October	100m2 sand push up trial at Sunset Beach completed eCoast “An Overview of Coastal Processes and Drivers of Coastal Hazards: Port Waikato” Revision 3 - FINAL
November December	Hume Consulting Presentation of Peer Reviews to PWRG Sea Wall / Sandbag Project Proposal presented to PWRG by NBS

2022

January	Tonkin + Taylor Sandbag Feasibility Report Presentation to PWRG
June	eCoast engaged by WDC to prepare documents for Sand Push Up Project Resource Consent Application.
August	Alternative Project Proposal Submitted to the Better Off Fund by Port Waikato Community Members
October	Better Off Fund Application declined
November	eCoast issue Draft Assessment of Environmental Effects Assessment for Beach Push-Ups at Port Waikato for Resource Consent application <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Issued to PWRG and Iwi Representatives for review

2023

February	Cyclone Gabrielle – Emergency Response and Recovery
March	WDC Port Waikato Community Meeting WDC Meeting with Ngāti Taahinga Representatives

To	Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee
Report title	Three Waters Reform Better Off Funding Special Project Update June 2023
Date:	28 June 2023
Report Author:	Deron Sharma Three Waters Reform Project Manager
Authorised by:	Gavin Ion Chief Executive

1. Purpose of the report

Te Take moo te puurongo

To inform the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee of current workstreams, activities, and key matters under the three waters reform better off funding special project.

2. Executive summary

Whakaraapopototanga matua

In 2021, Te Kāwanatanga o Aotearoa (New Zealand Government) announced the better off funding package, valued at \$500 million, as part of the three waters reform program. Te Kaunihera ā Takiwā o Waikato's (Waikato District Council's) allocation of this pūtea (fund) is \$31,531,126. The first 25%, valued at \$7.88 million, was allocated to Kaunihera under tranche 1, with the remainder to be introduced on 1 July 2024, contingent upon the three waters reform program progressing through Parliament.

Through the ministerial reset of the three waters reform program, it has been announced that the remaining 75% of the better off funding will no longer be available. This means that Kaunihera's allocation of the better off funding is wholly contained within tranche 1.

The better off funding application process saw a total of 115 applications being received, with a cumulative value of over \$50 million. A shortlist of 19 projects, valued at \$6.864 million, was developed. Whilst a standard, procurement process was followed in the evaluation of the longlist to the shortlist, the shortlisted projects have a mix of Council led, community led, and iwi led projects. A districtwide CCTV project was added to the list of projects, which lends itself to community aspirations for safety and welfare.

The Te Tari Taiwhenua (Department of Internal Affairs – DIA) have appointed Crown Infrastructure Partners (CIP) as the monitor of the pūtea, who have been tasked with providing a reporting template. Furthermore, CIP informed Kaunihera in March that a variation to the original funding agreement would be provided by May 2023. As of 12 June 2023, this has not been provided.

Without the variation to funding agreement and the reporting template, kaimahi are unable to develop back-to-back funding agreements with each applicant that mirror the obligations placed onto Kaunihera by DIA and CIP. The purpose of the back-to-back agreement is to mitigate any financial risk to Kaunihera and all applicants as the funding obligations are interdependent amongst applicants.

3. Staff recommendations Tuutohu-aa-kaimahi

THAT the Sustainability and Wellbeing Committee:

- a. notes that the project management for the three waters reform better off funding is ongoing;
- b. acknowledges that the initial 10% instalment can be claimed by Council; and
- c. accepts that staff are awaiting the reporting template and funding agreement variation from Crown Infrastructure Partners before claiming the fund to minimize the financial risk to Council and the applicants.

4. Discussion Matapaki

On 13 April 2013, the Prime Minister and Minister of Local Government jointly announced the Affordable Waters reform program, designed to observe the feedback provided by public and local government on the previous reform program. As part of the change, the four large water service entities have been dissolved into ten regional entities.

Te Kāwanatanga purports that the establishment costs related to the establishment of the ten water service entities will be higher than for four entities. Furthermore, the smaller entities will be lower debt ceilings. As a result, tranche 2 of the better off funding has been discontinued to avoid burdening the balance sheets of the smaller entities. Tranche 1 of the pūtea will remain in place (**Attachment 1**).

While the first 10% instalment of the pūtea is ready to be claimed without the requirement of an invoice or report, kaimahi Kaunihera are hesitant to do this. Reason being, kaimahi have assessed and determined that this poses a financial risk to Kaunihera as well as other applicants of the better off funding.

For context, Kaunihera signed a funding agreement with DIA and CIP in December 2022. CIP has indicated that a variation to this agreement is expected to arrive which accounts for the reporting portal that CIP has developed in addition to the impacts of the ministerial reset of three waters reform.

In the March 2023 update from CIP that was provided to the Committee on 5 April 2023 (**Attachment 2**), a variation to the original funding agreement was scheduled to be delivered to Kaunihera by April 2023, which was then extended to May 2023.

As of 12 June 2023, this has not been delivered.

The Waters Reform Manager has authored a letter to DIA and CIP, expressing Kaunihera's unique position with the better off funding kaupapa and the impacts of this on project delivery and Kaunihera's reputation (**Attachment 3**).

The funding agreement between Kaunihera, DIA, and CIP, is required in its final form to draft back-to-back funding agreements with each applicant. These agreements will be tailored for each applicant that takes into consideration CIP's reporting requirements, a reporting template that has been authorized by CIP, specific wellbeing outcomes, and funding recovery provisions should the applicant fail to adhere to Kaunihera, DIA, or CIP's policies.

The funding recovery provision is an imperative component of the funding agreement because if one applicant fails to meet the obligations that have been placed onto Kaunihera, all other applicants will be at risk of having their component of the pūtea revoked.

5. Next steps

Ahu whakamua

Kaimahi are seeking to receive the funding agreement variation from CIP, which will then trigger a legal review process. Depending on the nature of the variation, the Legal Team may seek to negotiate terms with the DIA and/or CIP.

Furthermore, kaimahi intend to understand the six-monthly reporting template that CIP claim to deliver in June 2023, as referenced in the May 2023 update provided by CIP (**Attachment 4**).

The funding agreement variation and the reporting template will be used to draft back-to-back funding agreements between Kaunihera and each applicant. Project delivery cannot begin until this has been completed, so these are critical-path tasks that kaimahi are looking forward to completing.

Kaimahi are working to develop and size a role to administer the better off funding projects and mahi.

6. Attachments

Ngaa taapirihanga

Attachment 1:	Affordable Waters Reform Overview
Attachment 2:	DIA Better Off Fund - CIP Update March 2023
Attachment 3:	Letter to DIA and CIP from WDC
Attachment 4:	DIA Better Off Fund - CIP Update May 2023

FACTSHEET

Information for councils: Water Services Reform

What's changing and why

There will be 10 water services entities closely based around existing regions.

This will enable the entities to have a closer relationship to the communities they serve, thereby strengthening local representation and influence over the entities' high-level decision making.

Every territorial authority owner, and therefore every community, will be represented on the entities' regional representative groups.

The 10 entities will still have the size necessary to improve access to funding to invest in water services, while continuing to ensure improved affordability of water services.

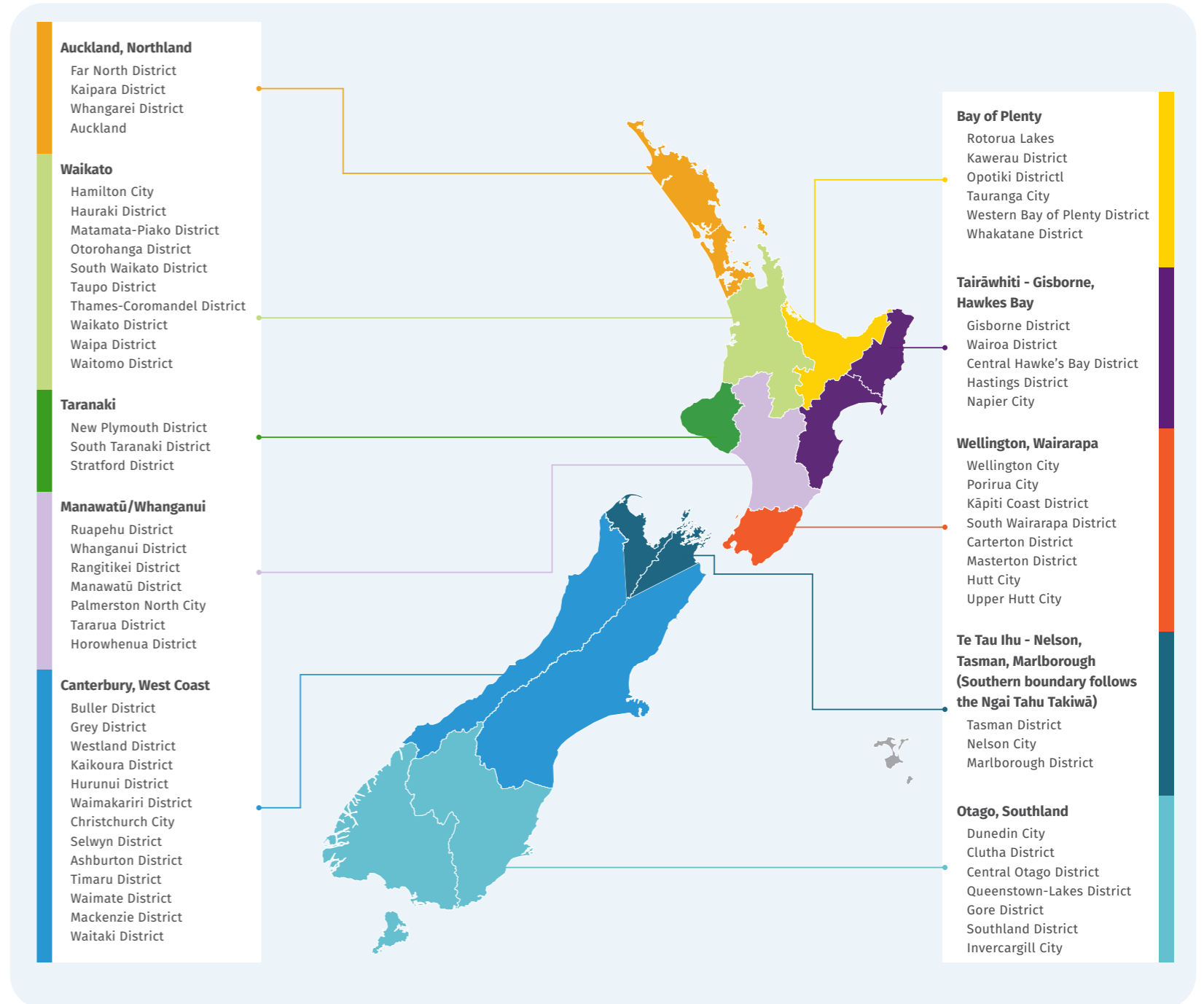
Changing the reform model means changes need to be made to the transition timeline.

It is necessary to change the establishment date of the entities, and when the new system comes into effect.

The establishment date for water services entities will be staggered, from early 2025 to 1 July 2026, rather than the original start date of 1 July 2024 for all entities.

The National Transition Unit will work with councils to determine 'go live' dates in light of the Government's changes to the reform model.

The change in establishment date means councils will continue to be responsible for delivering water services until the new 'go live' date for their entity – and into the early years of their 2024-34 long-term plan.



Stormwater continues to be included in the reforms.

Recent extreme weather events have further highlighted the importance – and fragility – of this critical infrastructure.

A significant amount of investment will be required in stormwater infrastructure into the future, and we will need entities of sufficient scale to make this happen.

Strengthened local voice and influence

Ownership

The entities will be owned by local councils on behalf of the public, but will be operationally and financially independent from councils.

This enables the entities to fund the significant long-term investment required. The entities will be of sufficient size – both in terms of assets and customers – to enable them to be financially sustainable and operate efficiently.

For consumers, this means an improved quality of service and improved affordability of water services, compared with the increase in water charges likely under a continuation of the current water service delivery model.

Governance

Each water services entity will be governed by a professional board. Members will be appointed for their competencies and experience. These will be merit-based appointments based on a defined and diverse skill set.

There is no requirement for ‘co-governance’ at the board level.

Strengthening local voice and influence through regional partnership

Local voice and representation has been strengthened through regional partnership via the regional representative group.

Regional representative groups provide regional and local-level direction and oversight. They set the strategic and performance expectations for their entity, appoint the board, approve the strategic direction, and monitor their entity’s performance.

Local voice has been strengthened. Under the 10-entity model, every territorial authority owner – and therefore every community – will be represented on the entity’s regional representative group.

Under te Tiriti o Waitangi/the Treaty of Waitangi, mana whenua have the right to participate in decisions that relate to water services. Iwi/Māori also have responsibilities as kaitiaki to protect Te Mana o te Wai, the health and mauri of our water.

Mana whenua will have equal representation on the regional representative groups alongside territorial authorities in each entity area. Communities will continue to have influence over the water services entities through regional representative groups.

284

Listening and accountable to their community

Water services entities will be required to consult with their customers, businesses, and residents on their strategic direction, investment priorities, and their prices and charges, and work closely with local authorities to ensure water infrastructure provides for growth and development in spatial plans.

Each entity will be required to engage with communities in a meaningful and effective manner on all key accountability documents, such as asset management plans and funding and pricing plans.

The entities will have to report on how consumer and community feedback was incorporated into their decision making and prepare an annual consumer engagement stocktake that captures satisfaction with performance and explains how the entity will respond to community needs and address concerns. Each entity will also set up a consumer forum.

Legislative changes will be needed

Legislation will be required to give effect to the Government’s changes to water services reform.

The Government intends to introduce and pass legislation to allow for these changes before this year’s election. This will be subject to the Parliamentary timetable and processes, including the opportunity for public feedback.

We recognise legislative certainty is needed for council and water sector planning and employment, and to provide clarity for ongoing transition and implementation activities.

- Councils are already preparing their 2024-34 long-term plans, and without legislative changes these cannot make provision for water services – until the new ‘go live’ date for each entity.
- Staff who work in the water sector want certainty of job guarantees in the future entities.
- The broader industry and supply chain need certainty to ensure continuity of much-needed investment.

Water services legislation currently before Parliament

The water services reform changes do not have any significant impacts on the water services legislation that is currently before Parliament.

The Water Services Legislation Bill and the Water Services Economic Efficiency and Consumer Protection Bill will continue on their current timetable.

Feedback provided on these Bills is being considered by the Finance and Expenditure Committee and any changes in response to feedback will be progressed through the select committee process.

This will include consideration of matters such as transfer provisions for CCOs and CCTOs, where there has been significant feedback. The Finance and Expenditure Committee is due to report back on 8 June 2023.

To give effect to the water services reform changes and to provide certainty for planning, there will be legislative and transitional changes over the months ahead.

i) Long-term planning and provision of water services

To recognise the extended establishment period, councils will continue to be responsible for water services until the handover date for their entity.

Council planning and reporting documents will need to reflect the continued service delivery obligations during the longer establishment period – which will include up to the first two years of the 2024-34 long-term planning cycle.

Legislative changes will be made to:

- Give councils the legal ability to include information relating to water services in their 2024-34 long-term plans.
- Ensure the appropriate planning and reporting provisions are in place to support a longer establishment period, and a staged approach to when each entity will 'go live'.

The National Transition Unit will work with sector representatives and the Office of the Auditor-General to prepare guidance material, and to support councils throughout the transition period.

ii) Funding support for councils

'Better off' funding

The first \$500 million of Crown-funded 'better off' funding for councils is unaffected by the decision and will continue as planned.

The second tranche of \$1.5 billion better off funding has been discontinued to ensure the water services entities are able to operate sustainably.

There have been mixed views on the proposed better off funding package, including strong views from some local authorities that this funding should be made available for investment into water infrastructure rather than for council investment more generally.

With smaller entities, it is important to ensure their balance sheets are not over-burdened by avoiding placing any more debt on them than is necessary.

Increasing the number of entities will have increased establishment costs for the entities. If water services entities are required to bear these increased costs, they will find it more challenging to raise borrowing to increase rates of investment in water infrastructure.

Given the above, the second \$1.5 billion tranche of better off funding can no longer be justified.

The \$500 million 'no worse off' funding package for councils will remain in place.

Water services entities will continue to be responsible for making these payments to local authorities upon entity establishment.

285

The provision of 'no worse off' funding acknowledges that the transition process gives rise to costs and financial impacts for councils.

This funding will ensure no council is left worse off as a result of bearing stranded costs, or because of the net impacts that the combination of losing revenue and debt could have on their credit ratings.

iii) Water services staff and collective bargaining

The transition timeframe for water services staff will change.

The National Transition Unit will be revising its timelines for affected staff in light of changes to water services reform, and this will be communicated as soon as possible.

We recognise the need to provide certainty to water services staff about their future place of employment and timing of when they will transfer to the new water services entities.

The current Position Review and Pathway consultation will continue.

This information will still be needed under the 10-entity model. We are aiming to notify staff of the outcome of the review with as little delay as possible.

The legislated job guarantee will continue.

The vast majority of local government employees who are primarily involved in the delivery of water services today will be covered by the Legislated Job Guarantee under the Water Services Entities Act 2022.

This guarantee is not expected to be impacted by a change to the number of entities, or the implementation timeframes.

Collective bargaining

The National Transition Unit will meet with unions at the earliest opportunity to assess the implications of the timeframe and larger number of entities for the collective bargaining approach.

The National Transition Unit will continue to work closely with unions, professional organisations, and water services staff in councils and council-controlled organisations to support the transition.

iv) Other transitional matters

Changes will also be made to transitional arrangements, to provide flexibility and to minimise any potential issues during the establishment period.

- The timeline for establishment board appointments will be revised in light of the new establishment timeframe.
- The Department of Internal Affairs | Te Tari Taiwhenua will retain its oversight powers relating to council decision making.

This will support the longer establishment period and ensure oversight of significant decisions.

- The constitution development process will also be revised in light of the new establishment timeframe and 10-entity model.

What happens next

Next steps

We recognise the need to provide certainty for councils, water services staff, and those you work with, about the path ahead.

We are reviewing our transition work programme to put the required changes in place. We will share this as soon as possible.



1. Council-DIA-CIP Funding Agreement update

DIA will be updating the Council-DIA-CIP Funding Agreement with common matters such as:

- **CIP BOF reporting system**

The DIA Grant Management System (GMS) does not have the level of functionality necessary for DIA's reporting requirements on the Better Off Fund programme. Matters such as project expenditure (actual and forecasting), health and safety reporting, and managing project substitution/change requests, have not been able to be incorporated into GMS.

CIP is developing a Better Off Fund reporting system that will be used in lieu of GMS. The system will be similar to the CIP the Infrastructure Reference Group (IRG – *shovel ready*) projects system.

The Funding Agreement references the use of GMS in several places including for payment requests and reporting, and hence the Funding Agreement requires variation to redirect the three Funding Agreement parties to the CIP BOF system for the provision of this functionality.

- **Funding Agreement End Date**

The Funding Agreement at Part 1, section 6 *End Date*, has generally been set as the final milestone end date each Council provided in their Funding Proposal. To ensure consistency across the motu and given there will be Project Substitution Requests and Project Changes that will vary the initially approved Funding Agreement and Proposal project dates, the Funding Agreement *End Date* will be varied to state 30 Jun-27 as the End Date for the last Crown funding project milestone in each Council programme.

- **Funding Agreement Permitted Funded Activities and Funding Proposal**

The Funding Agreement at Part 1, section 4 *Permitted Funded Activities*, and section 5 *Funding Proposal*, states the Recipient may only use the Funding for the purposes set out in Schedule 1 and in accordance with the Funding Proposal. As discussed above there will be Project Substitution Requests (PSRs) and Project Changes (PCs) that will vary the initially approved Permitted Funded Activities and Funding Proposal.

As reviewed in the CIP BOF Feb-23 update, each six-monthly Report will be a full restatement of each Council's Funding Proposal including a summary of expenditure for the relevant six-month period (for both Crown and cofunding), updated expenditure forecasts, timeline and milestone adjustments, an overview of PSRs approved in the period, any changes to existing projects or new projects that have been introduced, and any projects that have been abandoned.

The Funding Agreement will be varied to refer to this six-monthly comprehensive restatement of Council's Permitted Funded Activities as the formal record of the Funding Proposal at that time. This formal record will be signed off by each of the three parties to the Funding Agreement at each reporting period. The CIP BOF system will facilitate this six-monthly reporting.

- **FTE determination**

This matter is clarified in more detail below. In summary, the requirement for FTE reporting is specified in the Funding Agreement at Part 2 clause 1.3 (c):

Part 2: General Terms

1.3 Each Payment Request must include the amount of Funding requested, be authorised by the Chief Executive or an authorised representative of the Recipient, and be accompanied by the following supporting documentation: ...

- (c) a summary of the number of FTEs created through people employed in the relation to the Permitted Funding Activities; ...

CIP will be providing consistency through the programme by collecting Worker Hours by project by month from each Council. CIP will then calculate FTE by dividing total reported hours worked by standard hours in a month (assuming 8 hours a day, excluding weekends and public holidays).

The Funding Agreement therefore needs to be varied to be require Councils to report Worker Hours by project by month (rather than FTE).

This variation to the Council-DIA-CIP Funding Agreement can be expected in Apr-23.

2. Reporting system and CIP BOF portal

The CIP BOF portal functionality roll-out is planned as follows:

<i>functionality</i>	<i>timeframe</i>
Claim Processing	go live Fri 24 Mar-23
Project Changes and Project Substitution Requests	end of Apr-23
Six-monthly Reporting	end of May-23
User access and role configuration	end of Jun-23

Each roll-out will include CIP videos for reference for training purposes.

Council Programme Manager

Some Councils have multiple projects across departments in their programmes. To ensure consistent and efficient use of the CIP BOF system, CIP strongly recommends that each Council have a nominated Programme Manager (with a back-up person) overseeing the multiple projects and the data upload into the CIP BOF system.

3. Interim Project Substitution Request process

A number of Councils are considering amending their approved Funding Proposal given changing priorities including the recent severe weather events. Please discuss the proposed changes with your CIP Relationship Manager as soon as practical so that Project Changes and Project Substitution Requests can be reviewed against the Better Off Package criteria. In this way the PCs and PSRs will be ready to be uploaded when the CIP BOF portal functionality goes live at the end of Apr-23.

4. Progress claims and supporting information

The CIP BOF Feb-23 update set out the general expectation of three-monthly claims with Council deciding the multiple of monthly claim, up to six-monthly, to match their needs.

For each project claim the CIP BOF system will allow the upload of supporting documentation which could include, for example, any of the following information:

- eligible project costs as approved by Council's Chief Executive eg community grants
- For projects already commenced and in the absence of evidence in arrears, Council's Chief Executive certification of the project costs incurred
- copies of relevant project cost transactions and/or invoices
- an outline of how staff costs have been derived and will or have been allocated to projects (excluding overhead and management time that is not directly attributable to undertaking a Permitted Funding Activity)
- progress photographs
- self or third-party certification of milestones
- Contract payment certificates eg Engineer-to-the-Contract approval.

The CIP BOF system is configured such that each project within Council's BOF programme will be submitted as a separate claim (with no more than one claim per project per month). Approved project claims in any month will be bundled by DIA and processed as one Payment Request per Council.

For the avoidance of doubt all BOF funding, claims and payment requests are GST exclusive.

5. Reporting 'worker' hours and FTE determination

CIP will be providing consistency through the programme by collecting Worker Hours by project by month from each Council, and then CIP will calculate FTE by dividing total reported hours worked by standard hours in a month (assuming 8 hours a day, excluding weekends and public holidays).

This will be, for example, all on and off-site hours for construction projects including all main and subcontractors plus consultants (design, construction supervision, health and safety etc) and/or other service providers (Council or external) directly supporting the project. Another example would be for a capacity building initiative where all stakeholder direct involvement hours including project management time and facilitators and/or trainers will be reported.

If Councils have not been collecting worker hours to date on BOF projects which have commenced, then Councils will be asked to estimate and report the worker hours on the project since the approved Council BOF project commenced. The CIP Relationship Managers are available to assist if required.

Where Councils are using the BOF Crown funds as community grants or e.g., providing operational funding to other organisations, then CIP will determine a proxy FTE by using the project value, in conjunction with the primary project category classification to assess the project's labour component, and a typical average labour wage rate for the category, plus overall percentage and hourly rates for e.g., consultant/project management input. At this stage CIP will make this assessment on a project-by-project basis.

6. Contestable project funds

With reference to the CIP BOF Feb-23 update statement *'that all parties, including CIP, are efficiently involved in application processing once the local systems are open for applicants'* ... a way for a Council to efficiently involve CIP would be for the Council to provide CIP with the framework (policy/process) the contestable fund applications will be evaluated within and evidence that the criteria the projects will be judged against complies with the Better Off Package criteria being:

- supporting communities to transition to a sustainable and low emissions economy, including by building resilience to climate change and natural hazards;
- delivery of infrastructure and/or services that:
 - enable housing development and growth, with a focus on brownfield and infill development opportunities where those are available;
 - support local place-making and improvements in community well-being.

CIP would then be satisfied the contestable fund project grants complied with the Better Off Package criteria and would approve BOF project funding claims when received. The regular reporting requirements set out in the Funding Agreement at Part 1, section 8 Reporting, will give transparency to the approved contestable fund activities and expenditure in the reporting period, forecasts and risks, and outcomes achieved as a result of the permitted funding activities.

7. Council Funding Proposal disclosures

As per the DIA Three Waters Stimulus Programme, CIP and DIA intend to be reporting at regular intervals (at least six-monthly) to central government, local government, and in the public arena on the Better Off Package fund progress. There is always interest in the detail of specific projects and hence CIP are seeking advance reconfirmation that your Council's Better Off Package Funding Proposal has been approved by Council (or through officer delegations) and is in the public domain, provided that prior to any such disclosure DIA or CIP (as applicable) removes all information that is commercially sensitive to the Council from the relevant work.

Please advise your CIP Relationship Manager (if not done so already).

15 June 2023

Crown Infrastructure Partners and
Department of Internal Affairs

Postal Address

Private Bag 544
Ngaruawahia, 3742
New Zealand

0800 492 452
www.waikatodistrict.govt.nz

E tee rangatira, teenaa koe

Better off Funding Issue Escalation

Waikato District Council (WDC) undertook a unique process to utilise the Better Off fund. WDC has invested in their vision of building “liveable, thriving, connected communities” by administering this puutea as a contestable fund to 20 applicants.

We have been made aware by the Department of Internal Affairs (DIA) that we are the only local government organisation in the motu that has done this and that we have set a new standard for Maaori partnership.

In December 2022, we were advised that Crown Infrastructure Partners (CIP) would be developing a reporting template for councils to report progress updates on by January 2023. We were clear with CIP that we will not be progressing with project initiation until we receive the reporting template as we would need to mirror these obligations to our community applicants through back-to-back funding agreements to mitigate any financial risk to WDC and other applicants.

When this reporting template was not delivered by the agreed date, I contacted CIP on 1 February and 9 February 2023, respectively, with no response. Thereafter, on 17 February, I was advised that the reporting template would become available at the end of March 2023. This delayed our program initiation by three months notwithstanding that I could have developed a reporting template instead of waiting. These concerns were formally raised by WDC Chief Executive, Gavin Ion, at the March 2023 DIA Monthly Chief Executive Forum.

In the April 2023 update from Crown Infrastructure Partners, I was advised that we would receive a variation to the funding agreement by May 2023. On 25 May 2023, I received an email from CIP stating that I would receive said variation “next week.” It is now 7 June 2023 and I have no funding agreement variation.

I would like to highlight to the DIA and CIP, once again, that WDC is unique in its undertaking of this activity.

Community applicants are enquiring on a weekly basis about updates and when the funding can be released, but I am unable to answer this because the process is dictated by DIA and CIP.

I would like to escalate the following issues:

Issue 1: WDC is suffering reputational damage because deliverables aren’t being met by the monitor.

Issue 2: Without the funding agreement variation, Council is unable to progress with program execution. The costing for these projects was completed over six months ago. Accounting for rising costs to deliver, the risk of cost overruns is amplified. If projects run over the allocation that can be prescribed to a delayed start date, will the DIA or CIP absorb this?

Issue 3: The “Delivery Period” specified in the funding agreement that WDC has signed with CIP and DIA stipulated commencement upon signing from all parties. In the interest of fairness, I request the DIA to make provisions to the delivery period to account for any project that goes beyond the delivery period by the same amount of time that WDC is delayed.

I am committed to work with you for the benefit of our community and look forward to your response.

Naaku naa,

Deron Sharma
Three Waters Reform Project Manager

email: deron.sharma@waidc.govt.nz

CC:

EXECUTIVE LEADERSHIP TEAM
COUNCILLORS
KIRSTY WELLINGTON
KEITH MARTIN
BETTER OFF FUNDING ASSESSMENT PANEL

1. **Project Change module**

The CIP BOF portal Project Change module is now live. There are three guidance documents for the module, which are attached to the email with this update: project change, project discontinuation, and new project creation. There is also a tutorial available on-line to assist with familiarisation. Please contact your CIP Relationship Manager if you have any queries. At this stage, a national webinar to work through the module is not planned.

2. **Council programme update before end June 2023**

Each Council is required to use the Project Change module, before the end of June 2023, to refresh each project including milestones, providing expenditure forecasts by month, risk flags etc so that the information is as accurate and complete as it can be prior to entering the formal reporting round post 30 June 2023.

Expenditure forecasts should be entered on a monthly basis to align with internal project management and reporting. If Council is planning to seek re-imbursement on a monthly basis then this is required. If Council is intending to seek re-imbursement on a more periodic basis (say three or six-monthly) then the expenditure forecasts can be monthly or aligned with those periods.

Your CIP Relationship Manager will be in touch in the next few days to assist with any issues as you start the online programme review.

3. **Unallocated Tranche 1 Crown Funding**

If Council has set up a project in order to manage contingency funds or cost-escalation provisions, the project can now be discontinued. The CIP BOF portal has been updated to clearly show unallocated funds (in the header banner) within the overall Tranche 1 allocation. A project scope can be extended or a new project introduced when there are sufficient unallocated funds available.

4. **Project change bundles**

Council will be assessing multiple projects collectively where reductions in some are offset by increases in others. Reductions can occur without matching increases and any surplus will sit in the "Unallocated Funds" until a new opportunity for expenditure is identified. Increases cannot occur without a source of funds being identified.

Please advise your CIP Relationship Manager of project change bundles i.e. change, descope/extend, discontinuation, and/or substitution of projects, prior to uploading.

5. **Council BOF six-monthly formal report**

The template for the six-monthly formal report has been drafted and is now being refined. An example will be shared in June, including advising how the reporting process is expected to flow.

6. **Funding Agreement variation**

DIA will be emailing a Funding Agreement variation to Councils next week. The need for this variation addressing administrative and reporting matters was set out in the CIP Update March 2023.

7. **CIP BOF portal users**

The CIP Relationship Managers can upload new Council users to the CIP BOF portal.

Note – if new users are having difficulty gaining access to the portal, try refreshing the cache on your computer (F5) in the first instance, as this has worked for several councils.

If Council want to remove approved CIP BOF portal users, then please email details to bofportaltechsupport@crowinfrasturcture.govt.nz and the database will be updated.

8. **Early warning of at-risk projects**

Should Council have any projects with elevated risks e.g., consenting, procurement, or delivery, please advise your Relationship Manager.